

---

# **PSyclone Documentation**

***Release 1.7.0***

**Rupert Ford, Joerg Henrichs, Iva Kavcic, Andrew Porter  
and Sergi Siso**

**Sep 18, 2019**



# CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Getting Going</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1	Download . . . . .	3
1.2	Dependencies . . . . .	3
1.2.1	System-specific set-up . . . . .	4
1.2.2	fparser . . . . .	4
1.2.3	pyparsing . . . . .	4
1.2.4	graphviz . . . . .	5
1.2.5	termcolor . . . . .	5
1.2.6	py.test . . . . .	5
1.3	Environment . . . . .	6
1.4	Configuration . . . . .	6
1.5	Test . . . . .	7
1.6	Run . . . . .	8
<b>2</b>	<b>Examples</b>	<b>11</b>
2.1	GOcean . . . . .	11
2.1.1	Example 1: Loop transformations . . . . .	11
2.1.2	Example 2: OpenACC . . . . .	11
2.1.3	Example 3: OpenCL . . . . .	11
2.1.4	Example 4: Kernels containing use statements . . . . .	11
2.2	Dynamo . . . . .	12
2.2.1	Example 1 . . . . .	12
2.2.2	Example 2 . . . . .	12
2.2.3	Example 3 . . . . .	12
2.2.4	Example 4 . . . . .	12
2.2.5	Example 5 . . . . .	12
2.2.6	Example 6 . . . . .	12
2.2.7	Example 7 . . . . .	12
2.2.8	Example 8 . . . . .	12
2.2.9	Example 9 . . . . .	13
2.2.10	Example 10 . . . . .	13
2.2.11	Example 11 . . . . .	13
2.2.12	Example 12 . . . . .	13
2.2.13	Example 13 : Kernel transformation . . . . .	13
2.2.14	Example 14: OpenACC . . . . .	13
2.3	NEMO . . . . .	14
2.3.1	Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv . . . . .	14
2.3.2	Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso . . . . .	14
2.3.3	Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv . . . . .	14
2.3.4	Example 4: Transforming Fortran code to the SIR . . . . .	14

<b>3</b>	<b>PSyclone Script</b>	<b>15</b>
3.1	Running	15
3.2	Basic Use	16
3.3	Choosing the API	16
3.4	File output	16
3.5	Algorithm files with no invokes	17
3.6	Kernel search directory	17
3.7	Transformation script	18
3.8	Fortran line length	18
3.9	Distributed memory	18
3.10	Automatic Profiling Instrumentation	18
3.11	Outputting of Transformed Kernels	19
3.12	Fortran INCLUDE Files	19
<b>4</b>	<b>Kernel layer</b>	<b>21</b>
4.1	API	21
4.2	Metadata	22
<b>5</b>	<b>Algorithm layer</b>	<b>23</b>
5.1	API	23
5.1.1	Named Invokes	24
5.2	Limitations	24
<b>6</b>	<b>PSy layer</b>	<b>27</b>
6.1	Code Generation	27
6.2	API	28
6.2.1	InvokeSchedule visualisation	30
<b>7</b>	<b>Transformations</b>	<b>33</b>
7.1	Finding	33
7.2	Available transformations	34
7.3	Kernels	43
7.3.1	Rules	44
7.3.2	Available Kernel Transformations	45
7.4	Applying	46
7.4.1	Interactive	46
7.4.2	Script	47
7.5	OpenMP	48
7.5.1	Reductions	49
7.5.2	Restrictions	49
7.6	OpenCL	49
7.7	OpenACC	50
7.8	SIR	50
<b>8</b>	<b>Distributed Memory</b>	<b>51</b>
8.1	Correctness	51
8.2	Performance	51
8.3	Implementation	51
8.4	Control	52
8.5	Status	52
<b>9</b>	<b>Built-ins</b>	<b>53</b>
9.1	Example	53
9.2	Supported Built-in operations	56
9.3	Adding new additional Built-in operations	56

<b>10</b>	<b>Dynamo0.3 API</b>	<b>59</b>
10.1	Algorithm . . . . .	59
10.1.1	Example . . . . .	59
10.1.2	Field . . . . .	60
10.1.3	Field Vector . . . . .	60
10.1.4	Scalar . . . . .	60
10.1.5	Operator . . . . .	60
10.1.6	Column-Wise Operator . . . . .	60
10.1.7	Quadrature . . . . .	61
10.1.8	Stencils . . . . .	61
10.1.9	Inter-grid . . . . .	63
10.2	PSy-layer . . . . .	63
10.2.1	Module name . . . . .	63
10.3	Kernel . . . . .	63
10.3.1	Rules for all User-Supplied Kernels . . . . .	63
10.3.2	Rules specific to General-Purpose Kernels without CMA Operators . . . . .	64
10.3.3	Rules for Kernels that work with CMA Operators . . . . .	64
10.3.4	Rules for Inter-Grid Kernels . . . . .	65
10.3.5	Metadata . . . . .	65
10.3.6	Subroutine . . . . .	73
10.4	Built-ins . . . . .	78
10.4.1	Naming scheme . . . . .	78
10.4.2	Addition . . . . .	79
10.4.3	Subtraction . . . . .	81
10.4.4	Multiplication . . . . .	82
10.4.5	Scaling . . . . .	83
10.4.6	Division . . . . .	84
10.4.7	Setting to value . . . . .	84
10.4.8	Raising to power . . . . .	85
10.4.9	Inner product . . . . .	85
10.4.10	Sum of elements . . . . .	86
10.5	Boundary Conditions . . . . .	87
10.6	Conventions . . . . .	87
10.7	Configuration . . . . .	88
10.7.1	Annexed DoFs . . . . .	88
10.8	Transformations . . . . .	88
<b>11</b>	<b>GOcean1.0 API</b>	<b>95</b>
11.1	Introduction . . . . .	95
11.2	The GOcean Library . . . . .	95
11.2.1	Grid . . . . .	95
11.2.2	Fields . . . . .	97
11.2.3	Example . . . . .	97
11.3	Algorithm . . . . .	99
11.3.1	Invokes . . . . .	99
11.4	Kernel . . . . .	100
11.4.1	Metadata . . . . .	100
11.4.2	Subroutine . . . . .	105
11.5	Built-ins . . . . .	106
11.6	Conventions . . . . .	106
11.7	Configuration . . . . .	107
11.7.1	Iteration-spaces . . . . .	107
11.8	Transformations . . . . .	107

<b>12 NEMO API</b>	<b>111</b>
12.1 Algorithm	111
12.2 Constructing the PSyIR	111
12.2.1 Loops	111
12.3 Example	112
12.4 Transformations	113
12.5 Limitations	114
<b>13 Stub Generation</b>	<b>115</b>
13.1 Quick Start	115
13.2 Introduction	115
13.3 Use	116
13.4 Kernels	116
13.5 Example	117
13.6 Errors	120
<b>14 Line length</b>	<b>121</b>
14.1 Script	121
14.2 Interactive	121
14.3 Limitations	122
<b>15 Fortran Naming Conventions</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>16 API</b>	<b>125</b>
16.1 The generator module	125
16.2 The parse module	126
16.3 The transformations module	126
16.4 The psyGen module	146
16.5 The alg_gen module	147
16.6 The line_length module	148
<b>17 Profiling</b>	<b>149</b>
17.1 Profiling API	149
17.1.1 ProfileInit()	149
17.1.2 ProfileFinalise()	149
17.1.3 ProfileStart()/ProfileEnd()	150
17.2 Profiling Command Line Options	150
17.3 Profiling in Scripts - ProfileRegionTransform	152
17.4 Interface to Third Party Profiling Tools	152
<b>18 PSy Kernel Extractor (PSyKE)</b>	<b>153</b>
18.1 Introduction	153
18.1.1 Mechanism	153
18.1.2 Restrictions	154
18.2 Use	154
<b>19 System-specific Set-up for Users</b>	<b>157</b>
19.1 Installing dependencies	157
19.1.1 Installing dependencies on Ubuntu	157
19.1.2 Installing dependencies on OpenSUSE	157
19.2 Installing PSyclone	157
19.3 Common installation	158
<b>20 Configuration</b>	<b>159</b>
20.1 Options	159

20.1.1	DEFAULT Section . . . . .	160
20.1.2	Common Sections . . . . .	160
20.1.3	dynamo0.3 Section . . . . .	161
20.1.4	gocean1.0 Section . . . . .	161
20.1.5	NEMO Section . . . . .	161
<b>Bibliography</b>		<b>163</b>
<b>Python Module Index</b>		<b>165</b>
<b>Index</b>		<b>167</b>





PSyclone, the PSy code generator, is being developed for use in finite element, finite volume and finite difference codes. PSyclone development started with the aim to support the emerging API in the GungHo project for a finite element dynamical core.

The [GungHo project](#) was initiated in 2011 to address challenges of weather and climate prediction on the next generation of supercomputers. The project ran for 5 years as a collaboration between the Met Office, NERC (via NERC funded academics) and STFC. It laid a foundation for redesign of the heart of the Met Office's Unified Model, known as the dynamical core, from the choices of numerical methods and model grids to the implementation of parallel algorithms that will scale to millions of cores.

The software infrastructure based on the GungHo project recommendations is now being developed in the [LFRic project](#) and is expected to be operational in 2022. Its development is led by the requirements to support multiple meshes and element types, thus allowing for future model development.

GungHo also proposed a novel separation of concerns for the software implementation of the dynamical core. This approach distinguishes between three layers: the Algorithm layer, the Kernel layer and the Parallelisation System (PSy) layer. Together this separation is termed PSyKAl.

The Algorithm layer specifies the algorithm that the scientist would like to run (in terms of calls to kernel routines and built-in operations) and logically operates on full fields.

The Kernel layer provides the implementation of the code kernels as subroutines. These subroutines operate on local fields (a set of elements, a vertical column, or a set of vertical columns, depending on the kernel).

The PSy layer sits in-between the algorithm and kernel layers and its primary role is to provide node-based parallel performance for the target architecture. The PSy layer can be optimised for a particular hardware architecture, such as multi-core, many-core, GPGPUs, or some combination thereof with no change to the algorithm or kernel layer code. This approach therefore offers the potential for portable performance.

Rather than writing the PSy layer manually, the PSyclone code generation system can help a user to optimise the code for a particular architecture (by providing optimisations such as blocking, loop merging, inlining etc), or alternatively, generate the PSy layer automatically.

PSyclone is also being extended to support an API being developed in the [GOcean project](#) for two finite difference ocean model benchmarks, one of which is based on the [NEMO](#) ocean model.



## GETTING GOING

### 1.1 Download

The following instructions are intended for a PSyclone user who wants to work with a released version of the code. If you are a developer or wish to test a specific branch of PSyclone from the GitHub repository please see [Installation](#) in the [Developers' guide](#).

PSyclone is available on the Python Package Index (pypi.org) and is hosted on GitHub:

```
https://github.com/stfc/PSyclone
```

The latest release is 1.7.0 and the latest stable version is on the master branch.

PSyclone can be installed using pip:

```
> pip install psyclone
```

or downloaded from github - either see 1.7.0 in the `releases` tab on the PSyclone page or download and extract the latest release of PSyclone directly, e.g.

```
> wget https://github.com/stfc/PSyclone/archive/1.7.0.tar.gz
> tar xzf 1.7.0.tar.gz
> ls
PSyclone-1.7.0
```

Hereon the location where you download or clone PSyclone (including the PSyclone directory itself) will be referred to as `<PSYCLONEHOME>`.

### 1.2 Dependencies

PSyclone is written in Python so needs Python to be installed on the target machine. PSyclone has been tested under Python 2.7 and 3.6.

**Warning:** Release 1.6.0 of PSyclone requires version 0.0.7 of `fparser` and will fail on more recent versions. However simply installing this version using `pip` will install a later version of `fparser`. The suggested solution is to use release 1.6.1 which fixes this problem and is otherwise identical to 1.6.0. However, if you want to use release 1.6.0 you need to ensure that you have `fparser` 0.0.7. This can be achieved by downgrading an existing `fparser` installation or by installing version 0.0.7 of `fparser` *before* installing PSyclone.

PSyclone immediately relies on four external Python packages; `six`, `configparser`, `fparser` and `pyparsing`. In order to run the test suite `py.test` is required. The easiest way to satisfy the Python dependencies is to use the Python Package Index (pypi.org) and `pip`. See <https://packaging.python.org/installing/> for more information.

If everything is working correctly then using pip to install PSyclone:

```
> pip install psyclone
```

will automatically install the Python dependencies (`fparser` and `pyparsing`).

In addition to the mandatory dependencies just described, PSyclone also has optional dependencies on both `graphviz` and `termcolor`. PSyclone can use `graphviz` to produce a visualisation of a schedule's dependency graph. If this is desired then the Python package `graphviz` (for the Python bindings) as well as the `graphviz` package itself must be installed. If the `graphviz` package is not available then the associated PSyclone routines will return silently and no visualisations will be produced. The Python package `termcolor` is used for pretty-printing a schedule in terminals that support coloured text. If the package is not available then the schedule is simply printed in plain text without colour highlighting.

## 1.2.1 System-specific set-up

*System-specific Set-up for Users* instructions are available for Ubuntu 14.04.2 and OpenSUSE 42.2.

## 1.2.2 fparser

The `fparser` package (<https://github.com/stfc/fparser>) is a Fortran parser originally developed as a part of the `f2py` project.

The minimum version of `fparser` required by PSyclone is currently 0.0.8 but we strongly recommend you install the latest version to reduce the chance of encountering problems when parsing existing algorithm or kernel code. (Note that for older versions of PSyclone up to and including 1.5.1 you must use version 0.0.6 of `fparser`.)

`fparser` is available from the Python Package Index and thus may be installed using `pip` (<https://packaging.python.org/installing/#requirements-for-installing-packages>):

```
> pip install fparser
```

If you do not have sufficient permissions to perform a system-wide install then you can instruct pip to do a user-local install:

```
> pip install --user fparser
```

Should you wish to remove `fparser` then simply do:

```
> pip uninstall fparser
```

If you have already installed `fparser` and want to upgrade to the latest version simply do:

```
> pip install fparser --upgrade
```

## 1.2.3 pyparsing

PSyclone requires `pyparsing`, a library designed to allow parsers to be built in Python. PSyclone uses `pyparsing` to parse fortran regular expressions as `fparser` does not fully parse these, (see <http://pyparsing.wikispaces.com> for more information).

PSyclone has been tested with `pyparsing` versions 1.5.2, 2.0.1 and 2.2.0.

You can test whether `pyparsing` is already installed on your machine by typing `import pyparsing` from the python command line. If `pyparsing` is installed, this command will complete successfully. If `pyparsing` is installed you can check its version by typing `pyparsing.__version__` after successfully importing it.

If `pyparsing` is not installed on your system then it may be installed from the Python Package Index using `pip`:

```
> pip install pyparsing
```

Should you wish to, uninstalling is simply performed by doing:

```
> pip uninstall pyparsing
```

If you do not have sufficient privileges for a system-wide install then you can instruct `pip` to do a user-local install:

```
> pip install --user pyparsing
```

Alternatively, you could follow the instructions here <http://pyparsing.wikispaces.com/Download+and+Installation>.

### 1.2.4 graphviz

The data dependencies of a PSyIR schedule determine the validity of changes to this schedule. PSyclone supports the visualisation of these dependencies as a graph using `graphviz`. This visualisation is not needed to use PSyclone.

If the Python bindings to `graphviz` are not installed on your system then it may be installed from the Python Package Index using `pip`:

```
> sudo pip install graphviz
```

Should you wish to, uninstalling is simply performed by doing:

```
> sudo pip uninstall graphviz
```

If you do not have sufficient privileges for a system-wide install then you can instruct `pip` to do a user-local install:

```
> pip install --user graphviz
```

If `graphviz` itself is not installed on your system and your system supports the `apt` package manager then see below, otherwise please refer to the download and install instructions which are available here <http://www.graphviz.org/Download.php>.

If your system supports the `apt` package manager then it can be installed and removed in the following way:

```
> sudo apt install graphviz
> sudo apt remove graphviz
```

### 1.2.5 termcolor

By default, the `view()` method available on any PSyIR (PSyclone Internal Representation) object prints a plain-text representation to standard-out. However, if the `termcolor` package is available then PSyclone uses this to add colour highlighting to the output text.

Installation (and uninstallation) of this package can be done via `pip` in exactly the same way as for `graphviz`, as described above.

### 1.2.6 py.test

The PSyclone test suite uses `py.test`. This is not needed to use PSyclone but is useful to check whether PSyclone is working correctly on your system. You can test whether it is already installed by simply typing `py.test` at a shell prompt. If it is present you will get output that begins with

```
===== test session starts =====
```

If you do not have it then `py.test` can again be installed using `pip` or from here <http://pytest.org/latest/> (or specifically here <http://pytest.org/latest/getting-started.html>).

**Warning:** At the moment, Psyclone tests do not work with `pytest` version 5.0 or higher. *pip install psyclone* or *pip install -e .* from the psyclone directory install the appropriate version of `pytest`.

## 1.3 Environment

In order to use PSyclone (including running the test suite and building documentation) you will need to install it. The simplest way to do this is to use `pip` with the supplied `setup.py` file:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>
> pip install .
```

By default `pip` will attempt a system-wide install. If you wish to do a user-local install instead then supply the `--user` flag:

```
> pip install --user .
```

This installs the PSyclone modules in `~/.local/lib/pythonX.Y/site-packages` (where `X.Y` is the version of Python that you are using) and the ‘psyclone’ script in `~/.local/bin`. Depending on your linux distribution, you may need to add the latter location to your `$PATH`.

If for some reason you’d rather not use `pip` then you can run the setup manually:

```
> python setup.py install
```

or, if you don’t have root access:

```
> python setup.py install --user
```

or,

```
> python setup.py install --prefix /my/install/path
```

If using the latter method then it will be necessary to take further action to ensure PSyclone can find the configuration file installed as a part of this process - see below.

## 1.4 Configuration

Various aspects of PSyclone are configured through a configuration file, `psyclone.cfg`. The default version of this file is installed to `<python-base-prefix>/shared/psyclone/` during the installation process. If a system-wide installation is being performed then this will be something like `/usr/share/psyclone/`. If a user-local installation is performed (`--user` flag to `pip install`) then the location will be something like `~/.local/share/psyclone/`.

**Warning:** if PSyclone is installed to a non-standard location (e.g. by specifying the `--prefix=/some/path` option to `pip install`) then PSyclone will not be able to find the configuration file at execution time. There are two solutions to this: 1. copy the configuration file to a location where PSyclone will find it (see [Configuration](#)) or 2. set the `PSYCLONE_CONFIG` environment variable to the full-path to the configuration file, e.g.:

```
> export PSYCLONE_CONFIG=/some/path/PSyclone/config/psyclone.cfg
```

**Warning:** when installing in ‘editable’ mode (`-e` flag to `pip`), `pip` does *not* install the configuration file. You will have to take one of the two actions described above.

See [Configuration](#) for details of the settings contained within the config file.

## 1.5 Test

You can install the necessary dependencies to run the PSyclone tests with:

```
> pip install psyclone[test]
```

The test dependencies are canonically documented in PSyclone’s `setup.py` under the `extras_requires` section.

Once you have the necessary dependencies installed and your environment configured, you can check that things are working by using the PSyclone test suite. These tests are not required and can be skipped if preferred:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests
> py.test
```

If everything is working as expected then you should see output similar to:

```
===== test session starts =====
platform linux2 -- Python 2.6.5 -- py-1.4.29 -- pytest-2.7.2
rootdir: /home/ruert/proj/GungHoSVN/PSyclone_r3373_scripts/src/tests, inifile:
collected 175 items

alggen_test.py .....xxxxxxxxxxx.
dynamo0p1_transformations_test.py .
dynamo0p3_test.py .....x
generator_test.py .....
gocean0p1_transformations_test.py .....
gocean1p0_test.py ....
gocean1p0_transformations_test.py .....x.....
parser_test.py .....
psyGen_test.py .....

===== 160 passed, 15 xfailed in 13.59 seconds =====
```

Most of the tests use Fortran source files in the `<PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests` directory and many of them can be compiled during the testing process. To enable compilation testing run:

```
> py.test --compile --f90="<compiler_name>" --f90flags="<compiler_flags_list>"
```

"<compiler\_name>" and "<compiler\_flags\_list>" are optional arguments. The default value for "<compiler\_name>" is "gfortran" and there are no defaults for the "<compiler\_flags\_list>". Please

note that the onus is on the user to provide correct values for these options. Full details are provided in the [Compilation testing](#) section.

## 1.6 Run

You are now ready to try running PSyclone on the examples. One way of doing this is to use the `psyclone` driver script. Assuming it is on your `PATH`:

```
> psyclone
usage: psyclone [-h] [-oalg OALG] [-opsy OPSY] [-okern OKERN] [-api API]
               [-s SCRIPT] [-d DIRECTORY] [-I INCLUDE] [-l] [-dm] [-nodm]
               [--kernel-renaming {multiple,single}]
               [--profile {invokes,kernels}]
               [--force-profile {invokes,kernels}] [-v]
               filename
psyclone: error: too few arguments
```

As indicated above, the `psyclone` script takes the name of the Fortran source file containing the algorithm specification (in terms of calls to `invoke()`). It parses this, finds the necessary kernel source files and produces two Fortran files. The first contains the PSy, middle layer and the second a re-write of the algorithm code to use that layer. These files are named according to the user-supplied arguments (options `-oalg` and `-opsy`). If those arguments are not supplied then the script writes the generated/re-written Fortran to the terminal. For details of the other command-line arguments please see the [PSyclone Script](#) Section.

Examples are provided in the examples directory. There are 3 subdirectories (`dynamo`, `gocean` and `nemo`) corresponding to different APIs that are supported by PSyclone. In this case we are going to use one of the `dynamo` examples:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/examples/dynamo/egl
> psyclone -api dynamo0.1 \
> -oalg dynamo_alg.f90 -opsy dynamo_psy.f90 dynamo.F90
```

You should see two new files created called `dynamo_alg.f90` (containing the re-written algorithm layer) and `dynamo_psy.f90` (containing the generated PSy- or middle-layer). Since this is a `dynamo` example the Fortran source code has dependencies on the `dynamo` system and therefore cannot be compiled stand-alone.

You can also use the `runme.py` example to see the interactive API in action. This script contains:

```
from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory

# This example uses version 0.1 of the Dynamo API
api = "dynamo0.1"

# Parse the file containing the algorithm specification and
# return the Abstract Syntax Tree and invokeInfo objects
ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90", api=api)

# Create the PSy-layer object using the invokeInfo
psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
# Generate the Fortran code for the PSy layer
print(psy.gen)

# List the invokes that the PSy layer has
print(psy.invokes.names)

# Examine the 'schedule' (e.g. loop structure) that each
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```
# invoke has
schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_v3_kernel_type').schedule
schedule.view()

schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_1_v3_solver_kernel_type').schedule
schedule.view()
```

It can be run non-interactively as follows:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/example/dynamo/eg1
> python runme.py
```

However, to understand this example in more depth it is instructive to cut-and-paste from the runme.py file into your own, interactive python session:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/example/dynamo/eg1
> python
```

In addition to the runme.py script, there is also runme\_openmp.py which illustrates how one applies an OpenMP transform to a loop schedule within the PSy layer. The initial part of this script is the same as that of runme.py (above) and is therefore omitted here:

```
# List the various invokes that the PSy layer contains
print(psy.invokes.names)

# Get the loop schedule associated with one of these
# invokes
schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
schedule.view()

# Get the list of possible loop transformations
from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
t = TransInfo()
print(t.list)

# Create an OpenMPLoop-transformation object
ol = t.get_trans_name('OMPLoopTrans')

# Apply it to the loop schedule of the selected invoke
new_schedule, memento = ol.apply(schedule.children[0])
new_schedule.view()

# Replace the original loop schedule of the selected invoke
# with the new, transformed schedule
psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type')._schedule = new_schedule
# Generate the Fortran code for the new PSy layer
print(psy.gen)
```



## EXAMPLES

Various examples of the use of PSyclone are provided under the `examples` directory. All of these examples require that PSyclone be installed on the host system, see [Getting Going](#). This document is intended to provide an overview of the various examples so that a user can find one that is appropriate to them. For details of how to run each example please see the README files in the associated directories.

## 2.1 GOcean

### 2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations

Examples of applying various transformations (loop fusion, OpenMP, OpenACC) to the semi-PSyKAI'd version of the Shallow benchmark. ("semi" because not all kernels are called from within `invoke()`'s.) Also includes an example of generating a DAG from an `InvokeSchedule`.

### 2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC

This is a simple but complete example of using PSyclone to enable an application to run on a GPU by adding OpenACC directives. A Makefile is included which will use PSyclone to generate the PSy code and transformed kernels and then compile the application. This compilation requires that the `dl_esm_inf` library ([github.com/stfc/dl\\_esm\\_inf](https://github.com/stfc/dl_esm_inf)) be installed/available - it is provided as a git submodule of the PSyclone project (see [Installation](#) in the Developers' Guide for details on working with submodules).

The supplied Makefile also provides a second, "profile" target which performs the same OpenACC transformations but then encloses the whole of the resulting PSy layer in a profiling region. By linking this with the PSyclone NVTX profiling wrapper (and the NVTX library itself), the resulting application can be profiled using NVIDIA's *nvprof* or *nvvp* tools.

### 2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL

Example of the use of PSyclone to generate an OpenCL driver version of the PSy layer and OpenCL kernels.

### 2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements

Transforming kernels for use with either OpenACC or OpenCL requires that we handle those that access data and/or routines via module *use* statements. This example shows the various forms for which support is planned (Issues #323 and #342).

## 2.2 Dynamo

Examples 1 and 2 are for the (deprecated) Dynamo 0.1 API. The remaining examples are all for the Dynamo 0.3 API.

### 2.2.1 Example 1

Basic operation of PSyclone with `invoke()`'s containing just one kernel for the Dynamo 0.1 API. Also includes an example of transforming for OpenMP.

### 2.2.2 Example 2

A more complex example for the Dynamo 0.1 API containing multi-kernel invokes. Provides examples of OpenMP and loop fusion transformations.

### 2.2.3 Example 3

Shows the use of colouring and OpenMP for the Dynamo 0.3 API. Includes multi-kernel, named invokes with both user-supplied and built-in kernels.

### 2.2.4 Example 4

Demonstrates the use of the special `enforce_bc_kernel` which PSyclone recognises as a boundary-condition kernel.

### 2.2.5 Example 5

Example of kernels which require stencil information.

### 2.2.6 Example 6

Example of applying OpenMP to an `InvokeSchedule` containing kernels that perform reduction operations. Two scripts are provided, one of which demonstrates how to request that PSyclone generate code for a reproducible OpenMP reduction. (The default OpenMP reduction is not guaranteed to be reproducible from one run to the next on the same number of threads.)

### 2.2.7 Example 7

Example of kernels requiring Column-Matrix Assembly operators.

### 2.2.8 Example 8

Example of the use of the redundant-computation and move transformations to eliminate and re-order halo exchanges.

### 2.2.9 Example 9

Demonstrates the behaviour of PSyclone for kernels that read and write quantities on horizontally-discontinuous function spaces. In addition, this example demonstrates how to write a PSyclone transformation script that only colours loops over continuous spaces.

### 2.2.10 Example 10

Demonstrates the use of “inter-grid” kernels that prolong or restrict fields (map between grids of different resolutions).

### 2.2.11 Example 11

Example of the use of transformations to introduce redundant computation, split synchronous halo exchanges into asynchronous exchanges (start and stop) and move the starts of those exchanges in order to overlap them with computation.

### 2.2.12 Example 12

Example of applying code extraction to Nodes in an Invoke Schedule:

```
> psyclone -nodm -s ./extract_nodes.py \
    gw_mixed_schur_preconditioner_alg_mod.x90
```

or to a Kernel in an Invoke after applying transformations:

```
> psyclone -nodm -s ./extract_kernel_with_transformations.py \
    gw_mixed_schur_preconditioner_alg_mod.x90
```

For now it only inserts comments in appropriate locations while the the full support for code extraction is being developed.

This example also contains a Python helper script `find_kernel.py` which displays the names and Schedules of Invokes containing call(s) to the specified Kernel:

```
> python find_kernel.py
```

### 2.2.13 Example 13 : Kernel transformation

Demonstrates how an LFRic kernel can be transformed. The example transformation makes Kernel values constant where appropriate. For example, the number of levels is usually passed into a kernel by argument but the transformation allows a particular value to be specified which the transformation then sets as a parameter in the kernel. Hard-coding values in a kernel helps the compiler to do a better job when optimising the code.

### 2.2.14 Example 14: OpenACC

Example of adding OpenACC directives in the dynamo0.3 API. This is a work in progress so the generated code may not work as expected. However it is never-the-less useful as a starting point. Three scripts are provided.

The first script (*acc\_kernels.py*) shows how to add OpenACC Kernels directives to the PSy-layer. This example only works with distributed memory switched off as the OpenACC Kernels transformation does not yet support halo exchanges within an OpenACC Kernels region.

The second script (*acc\_parallel.py*) shows how to add OpenACC Loop, Parallel and Enter Data directives to the PSyclone layer. Again this example only works with distributed memory switched off as the OpenACC Parallel transformation does not support halo exchanges within an OpenACC Parallel region.

The third script (*acc\_parallel\_dm.py*) is the same as the second except that it does support distributed memory being switched on by placing an OpenACC Parallel directive around each OpenACC Loop directive, rather than having one for the whole invoke. This approach avoids having halo exchanges within an OpenACC Parallel region.

The generated code has a number of problems including 1) it does not modify the kernels to include the OpenACC Routine directive, 2) a loop's upper bound is computed via a derived type (this should be computed beforehand) 3) `set_dirty` and `set_clean` calls are placed within an OpenACC Parallel directive and 4) there are no checks on whether loops are parallel or not, it is just assumed they are - i.e. support for colouring or locking is not yet implemented.

## 2.3 NEMO

These examples may all be found in the `PSyclone/examples/nemo` directory.

### 2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of `tra_adv`

Demonstrates the use of PSyclone to parallelise the loops over vertical levels in a NEMO tracer-advection benchmark using OpenMP.

### 2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of `trldf_iso`

Demonstrates the use of PSyclone to parallelise the loops over vertical levels in some NEMO tracer-diffusion code using OpenMP.

### 2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of `tra_adv`

Demonstrates the introduction of simple OpenACC parallelisation (using the `data` and `kernels` directives) for a NEMO tracer-advection benchmark.

### 2.3.4 Example 4: Transforming Fortran code to the SIR

Demonstrates that simple Fortran code examples which conform to the NEMO API can be transformed to the Stencil Intermediate Representation (SIR). The SIR is the front-end language to DAWN (<https://github.com/MeteoSwiss-APN/dawn>), a tool which generates optimised cuda, or gridtools code. Thus these simple Fortran examples can be transformed to optimised cuda and/or gridtools code by using PSyclone and then DAWN.

## PSYCLONE SCRIPT

The simplest way to run PSyclone is to use the `psyclone` script. If you installed PSyclone using `pip` then this script should be available on your `PATH` (see [Environment](#) for more details). Alternatively it can be found in the `<PSYCLONEHOME>/bin` directory. The script takes an algorithm file as input and outputs modified algorithm code and generated PSy code. This section walks through its functionality.

### 3.1 Running

The `psyclone` script is executable and designed to be run from the command line, e.g.:

```
> psyclone <args>
```

The optional `-h` argument gives a description of the options provided by the script:

```
> psyclone -h

usage: psyclone [-h] [-oalg OALG] [-opsy OPSY] [-okern OKERN] [-api API]
               [-s SCRIPT] [-d DIRECTORY] [-I INCLUDE] [-l] [-dm] [-nodm]
               [--kernel-renaming {multiple,single}]
               [--profile {invokes,kernels}]
               [--force-profile {invokes,kernels}] [-v] filename

Run the PSyclone code generator on a particular file

positional arguments:
  filename                algorithm-layer source code

optional arguments:
  -h, --help              show this help message and exit
  -oalg OALG              filename of transformed algorithm code
  -opsy OPSY              filename of generated PSy code
  -okern OKERN            directory in which to put transformed kernels
  -api API                choose a particular api from ['dynamo0.1',
                  'dynamo0.3', 'gocean0.1', 'gocean1.0', 'nemo'],
                  default 'dynamo0.3'.
  -s SCRIPT, --script SCRIPT
                          filename of a PSyclone optimisation script
  -d DIRECTORY, --directory DIRECTORY
                          path to root of directory structure containing kernel
                          source code
  -I INCLUDE, --include INCLUDE
                          path to Fortran INCLUDE files (nemo API only)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

-l, --limit                limit the fortran line length to 132 characters
-dm, --dist_mem            generate distributed memory code
-nodm, --no_dist_mem      do not generate distributed memory code
--kernel-renaming {single,multiple}
                          Naming scheme to use when re-naming transformed
                          kernels.
--profile {invokes,kernels}, -p {invokes,kernels}
                          Add profiling hooks for either 'kernels' or 'invokes'
--force-profile {invokes,kernels}
                          Add profiling hooks for either 'kernels' or 'invokes'
                          even if a transformation script is used. Use at your
                          own risk.
-v, --version              Display version information (1.6.0)

```

## 3.2 Basic Use

The simplest way to use `psyclone` is to provide it with an algorithm file:

```
> psyclone alg.f90
```

If the algorithm file is invalid for some reason, the script should return with an appropriate error. For example, if we use the Python `genkernelstub` script as an algorithm file we get the following:

```

> psyclone <PSYCLONEHOME>/bin/genkernelstub
...
1:#!/usr/bin/env python <== no parse pattern found for "#" in 'BeginSource' block.
'Parse Error: Fatal error in external fparser tool'

```

If the algorithm file is valid then the modified algorithm code and the generated PSy code will be output to the terminal screen.

## 3.3 Choosing the API

In the previous section we relied on PSyclone using the default API. The default API, along with the supported APIs can be seen by running the `psyclone` script with the `-h` option.

If you use a particular API frequently and it is not the default then you can change the default by creating a copy of the default `psyclone.cfg` file and editing it. See [Configuration](#) for more details.

If your code uses an API that is different to the default then you can specify this as an argument to the `psyclone` script.

```
> psyclone -api dynamo0.1 alg.f90
```

## 3.4 File output

By default the modified algorithm code and the generated PSy code are output to the terminal. These can instead be output to files by using the `-oalg <file>` and `-opsy <file>` options, respectively. For example, the following will output the generated PSy code to the file `'psy.f90'` but the algorithm code will be output to the terminal:



```
> psyclone -opsy psy.f90 alg.f90
```

If PSyclone is being used to transform Kernels then the location to write these to is specified using the `-okern <directory>` option. If this is not supplied then they are written to the current working directory. By default, PSyclone will overwrite any kernel of the same name in that directory. To change this behaviour, the user can use the `--no_kernel_clobber` option. This causes PSyclone to re-name any transformed kernel that would clash with any of those already present in the output directory.

### 3.5 Algorithm files with no invokes

If the `psyclone` script is provided with a file that contains no `invoke` calls then the script outputs a warning to `stdout` and copies the input file to `stdout`, or to the specified algorithm file (if the `-oalg <file>` option is used). No PSy code will be output. If a file is specified using the `-opsy <file>` option this file will not be created.

```
> psyclone -opsy psy.f90 -oalg alg_new.f90 empty_alg.f90
Warning: 'Algorithm Error: Algorithm file contains no invoke() calls: refusing to
generate empty PSy code'
```

### 3.6 Kernel search directory

When an algorithm file is parsed, the parser looks for the associated kernel files. The way in which this is done requires that any user-defined kernel routine (as opposed to *Built-ins*) called within an `invoke` must have an explicit `use` statement. For example, the following code gives an error:

```
> cat no_use.f90
program no_use
  call invoke(testkern_type(a,b,c,d,e))
end program no_use
> psyclone -api gocean1.0 no_use.f90
"Parse Error: kernel call 'testkern_type' must either be named in a use statement or
↳be a recognised built-in (one of '[]' for this API)"
```

(If the chosen API has any *Built-ins* defined then these will be listed within the `[]` in the above error message.) If the name of the kernel is provided in a `use` statement then the parser will look for a file with the same name as the module in the `use` statement. In the example below, the parser will look for a file called “testkern.f90” or “testkern.F90”:

```
> cat use.f90
program use
  use testkern, only : testkern_type
  call invoke(testkern_type(a,b,c,d,e))
end program use
```

Therefore, for PSyclone to find kernel files, the module name of a kernel file must be the same as its filename. By default the parser looks for the kernel file in the same directory as the algorithm file. If this file is not found then an error is reported.

```
> psyclone use.f90
Kernel file 'testkern.[fF]90' not found in <location>
```

The `-d` option can be used to tell `psyclone` where to look for kernel files by supplying it with a directory. The script will recurse from the specified directory path to look for the required file. There must be only one instance of the specified file within (or below) the specified directory:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone
> psyclone -d . use.f90
More than one match for kernel file 'testkern.[fF]90' found!
> psyclone -d tests/test_files/dynamo0p3 -api dynamo0.3 use.f90
[code output]
```

---

**Note:** The `-d` option is limited to a single directory. Therefore a current limitation in PSyclone is that all kernel files required by an algorithm file must exist within a directory hierarchy where their file names are unique.

---

## 3.7 Transformation script

By default the `psyclone` script will generate ‘vanilla’ PSy layer code. The `-s` option allows a Python script to be specified which can transform the PSy layer. This option is discussed in more detail in the [Script](#) section.

## 3.8 Fortran line length

By default the `psyclone` script will generate fortran code with no consideration of Fortran line-length limits. As the line-length limit for free-format Fortran is 132 characters, the code that is output may be non-conformant.

Line length is not an issue for many compilers as they allow compiler flags to be set which allow lines longer than the Fortran standard. However this is not the case for all compilers.

When the `-l` option is specified to the `psyclone` script, the output will be line wrapped so that the output lines are always within the 132 character limit.

The `-l` option also checks the parsed algorithm and kernel files for conformance and raises an error if they do not conform.

Line wrapping is not performed by default. There are two reasons for this. This first reason is that most compilers are able to cope with long lines. The second reason is that the line wrapping implementation could fail in certain pathological cases. The implementation and limitations of line wrapping are discussed in the [Limitations](#) section.

## 3.9 Distributed memory

By default the `psyclone` script will generate distributed memory (DM) code (i.e. parallelised using MPI). As with the choice of API, this default may be configured by editing `psyclone.cfg` - see [Configuration](#). Alternatively, whether or not to generate DM code can be specified as an argument to the `psyclone` script using the `-dm/--dist_mem` or `-nodm/--no_dist_mem` flags, respectively.

For details of PSyclone’s support for generating DM code see [Distributed Memory](#).

## 3.10 Automatic Profiling Instrumentation

The `--profile` option allows the user to instruct PSyclone to automatically insert profiling calls within the generated PSy code. Two options are provided, `invokes` and `kernels`. The first of these causes PSyclone to insert profiling-start and -stop calls at the beginning and end of every generated invoke routine. The second puts profiling calls around every kernel call (including the associated loops). The generated code must be linked against the PSyclone profiling interface and the profiling tool itself. The application that calls the PSyclone-generated code is responsible for

initialising and finalising the profiling library that is being used. For full details on the use of this profiling functionality please see the [Profiling](#) section.

## 3.11 Outputting of Transformed Kernels

When transforming kernels there are two use-cases to consider:

1. a given kernel will be transformed only once and that version then used from multiple, different Invokes and Algorithms;
2. a given kernel is used from multiple, different Invokes and Algorithms and is transformed differently, depending on the Invoke.

Whenever PSyclone is used to transform a kernel, the new kernel must be re-named in order to avoid clashing with other possible calls to the original. By default (`--kernel-renaming multiple`), PSyclone generates a new, unique name for each kernel that is transformed. Since PSyclone is run on one Algorithm file at a time, it uses the chosen kernel output directory (`-okern`) to ensure that names created by different invocations do not clash. Therefore, when building a single application, the same kernel output directory must be used for each separate invocation of PSyclone.

Alternatively, in order to support use case 1, a user may specify `--kernel-renaming single`: now, before transforming a kernel, PSyclone will check the kernel output directory and if a transformed version of that kernel is already present then that will be used. Note, if the kernel file on disk does not match with what would be generated then PSyclone will raise an exception.

## 3.12 Fortran INCLUDE Files

For the NEMO API, if the source code to be processed by PSyclone contains INCLUDE statements (other than those for libraries such as MPI) then the location of any INCLUDE'd files must be supplied to PSyclone via the `-I` or `--include` option. (This is necessary because INCLUDE lines are a part of the Fortran language and must therefore be parsed - they are not handled by any pre-processing step.) Multiple locations may be specified by using multiple `-I` flags, e.g.:

```
> psyclone api "nemo" -I /some/path -I /some/other/path alg.f90
```

If no include paths are specified then the directory containing the source file currently being parsed is searched by default. If the specified include file is not found then ideally the INCLUDE line would be left unchanged. However, fparser currently treats any such INCLUDE lines as comments which results in them being lost (fparser issue #138). The workaround for this is to ensure that the location of *all* INCLUDE files is supplied to PSyclone.

Attempting to specify `-I/--include` for any API other than NEMO will be rejected by PSyclone.



## KERNEL LAYER

In the PSyKAl separation of concerns, Kernel code (code which is created to run within the Kernel layer), works over a subset of a field (such as a column). The reason for doing this is that it gives the PSy layer the responsibility of calling the Kernel over the spatial domain which is where parallelism is typically exploited in finite element and finite difference codes. The PSy layer is therefore able to call the kernel layer in a flexible way (blocked and/or in parallel for example). Kernel code in the kernel layer is not allowed to include any parallelisation calls or directives and works on raw fortran arrays (to allow the compiler to optimise the code).

Since a Kernel is called over the spatial domain (by the PSy layer) it must take at least one field or operator as an argument.

### 4.1 API

Kernels in the kernel layer are implemented as subroutines within fortran modules. One or more kernel modules are allowed, each of which can contain one or more kernel subroutines. In the example below there is one module `integrate_one_module` which contains one kernel subroutine `integrate_one_code`. The kernel subroutines contain the code that operates over a subset of the field (such as a column).

Metadata describing the kernel subroutines is required by the PSyclone system to generate appropriate PSy layer code. The metadata is written by the kernel developer and is kept with the kernel code in the same module using a sub-type of the `kernel_type` type. In the example below the `w3_solver_kernel_type` type specifies the appropriate metadata information describing the kernel code for the `dynamo0.3` api:

```
module w3_solver_kernel_mod

  use kernel_mod,      only : kernel_type
  use constants_mod,   only : r_def
  use argument_mod,    only : arg_type, func_type, &
                        GH_FIELD, GH_READ, GH_WRITE, W0, W3, &
                        GH_BASIS, GH_DIFF_BASIS, CELLS

  implicit none

  type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: w3_solver_kernel_type
  private
    type(arg_type) :: meta_args(4) = (/
      arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_WRITE, W3),      &
      arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, W3),       &
      arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_READ, W0),     &
      arg_type(GH_REAL, GH_READ)             &
    /)
    type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(2) = (/
      func_type(W3, GH_BASIS),               &

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        func_type(W0, GH_DIFF_BASIS)                                &
    /)
    integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
    integer :: iterates_over = CELLS
contains
    procedure, nopass :: solver_w3_code
end type

contains

    subroutine solver_w3_code(nlayers,                                &
                             x, rhs,                                &
                             chi_1, chi_2, chi_3, ascalar,          &
                             ndf_w3, undf_w3, map_w3, w3_basis,     &
                             ndf_w0, undf_w0, map_w0, w0_diff_basis, &
                             nqp_h, nqp_v, wqp_h, wqp_v)
        ...
    end subroutine solver_w3_code
end module w3_solver_kernel_mod

```

## 4.2 Metadata

Kernel metadata is not required if the PSy layer is going to be written manually - its sole purpose is to let PSyclone know how to generate the PSy layer. The content of Kernel metadata differs depending on the particular API and this information can be found in the API-specific sections of this document.

In all APIs the kernel metadata is implemented as an extension of the *kernel\_type* type. The reason for using a type to specify metadata is that it allows the metadata to be kept with the code and for it to be compilable. In addition, currently all APIs will contain information about the arguments in an array called *meta\_args*, a specification of what the kernel code iterates over in a variable called *iterates\_over* and a reference to the kernel code as a type bound procedure.

```

type, extends(kernel_type) :: integrate_one_kernel
    ...
    type(...) :: meta_args(...) = (/ ... /)
    ...
    integer :: ITERATES_OVER = ...
    ...
contains
    ...
    procedure ...
    ...
end type integrate_one_kernel

```

## ALGORITHM LAYER

In the PSyKAl separation of concerns, the Algorithm layer specifies the algorithm that the scientist would like to run (in terms of calls to kernel routines and Built-in operations) and logically operates on full fields. Algorithm code in the algorithm layer is not allowed to include any parallelisation calls or directives and passes datatypes specified by the particular API.

### 5.1 API

The Algorithm layer is forbidden from calling the Kernel layer directly. In PSyclone, if the programmer would like to call a Kernel routine or a Built-in operation from the algorithm layer they must use the `invoke` call (which is common to all APIs). The `invoke` call is not necessary (and indeed will not work) if the PSy layer is written manually.

To make an `invoke` call, the algorithm layer developer adds one or more `call invoke()` statements to their code and within the content of the `invoke` call they add a reference to the required Kernel/Built-in and the data to pass to it. For example,

```
...  
call invoke(integrate_one_kernel(arg1,arg2))  
...
```

For more information on the concept of Built-in operations see the [Built-ins](#) Section. Details of which operations are supported for a specific API are given in the documentation of that API.

The algorithm layer can consist of an arbitrary number of files containing fortran code, any of which may contain as many `invoke()` calls as is required. PSyclone is applied to an individual algorithm layer file and must therefore be run multiple times if multiple files containing `invoke()` calls exist in the algorithm layer.

The algorithm developer is also able to reference more than one Kernel/Built-in within an `invoke`. In fact this feature is encouraged for performance reasons. **As a general guideline the developer should aim to use as few invokes as possible with as many Kernel references within them as is possible.** The reason for this is that it allows for greater freedom for optimisation in the PSy layer as PSy layer optimisations are limited to the contents of individual `invoke` calls - PSyclone currently does not attempt to optimise the PSy layer over multiple `invoke` calls.

As well as generating the PSy layer code, PSyclone modifies the Algorithm layer code, replacing `invoke` calls with calls to the generated PSy layer so that the algorithm code is compilable and linkable to the PSy layer and adding in the appropriate `use` statement. For example, the above `integrate_one_kernel` `invoke` is translated into something like the following:

```
...  
use psy, only : invoke_0_integrate_one_kernel  
...  
call invoke_0_integrate_one_kernel(arg1,arg2)  
...
```

You may have noticed from other examples in this guide that an algorithm specification in an invoke call references the metadata `type` in an invoke call, not the `code` directly; this is by design.

For example, in the invoke call below, `integrate_one_kernel` is used.

```
...
call invoke(integrate_one_kernel(arg1,arg2))
...
```

`integrate_one_kernel` is the name of the metadata type in the module, not the name of the subroutine in the Kernel...

```
module integrate_one_module
  ...
  type, extends(kernel_type) :: integrate_one_kernel
  ...
end type
...
contains
  ...
  subroutine integrate_one_code(...)
  ...
  end subroutine integrate_one_code
  ...
end module integrate_one_module
```

### 5.1.1 Named Invokes

PSyclone permits the user to optionally specify a label for an invoke call like so:

```
...
call invoke(integrate_one_kernel(arg1,arg2), &
           name="compute something")
...
```

The `name` argument to the invoke call is optional. If supplied it must be a string literal. The content of this string (with any spaces replaced by ‘`_`’ characters) is used in naming the corresponding PSy-layer routine generated by PSyclone. So, for the above example, the generated PSy-layer subroutine will be named “`invoke_compute_something`.” Each invoke label must currently be unique within an Algorithm source file. Note that, in keeping with the Fortran language, labels are not case sensitive and, after having any spaces replaced by underscores, must be valid Fortran names (e.g. `name="compute(1)"` is invalid). In the future it is intended that the labelling of invokes will help to support invoke-specific optimisations to be applied as well as enabling more readable profiling output. It may also be used to instruct PSyclone to just generate a single subroutine to implement all invokes that share the same label.

## 5.2 Limitations

In order to re-write the Algorithm layer, as just described, PSyclone must obviously be able to parse the invoke calls. Since the Fortran expression parser used by PSyclone is relatively simple, this means there are limitations on what Fortran may be used when specifying kernel arguments in an invoke call. Since these limitations can have a direct impact on the natural science code, the PSyclone developers endeavour to keep them to a minimum.

The current list of known limitations/restrictions on the form of kernel arguments within an invoke is:

- No arithmetic expressions (e.g. `kernel_type(a+b)` or `kernel_type(-a)`)



- No named (optional) arguments (e.g. `kernel_type(fn(my_arg=a))`)

If you encounter any other limitations (or have a burning desire to use one of the above forms) then please contact the PSyclone developers.



## PSY LAYER

In the PSyKAI separation of concerns, the PSy layer is responsible for linking together the Algorithm and Kernel layers and for providing the implementation of any Built-in operations used. Its functional responsibilities are to

1. map the arguments supplied by an Algorithm `invoke` call to the arguments required by a Built-in or Kernel call (as these will not have a one-to-one correspondance).
2. call any Kernel routines such that they cover the required iteration space and
3. perform any Built-in operations (either by including the necessary code directly in the PSy layer or by e.g. calling a maths library) and
4. include any required distributed memory operations such as halo swaps and reductions.

Its other role is to allow the optimisation expert to optimise any required distributed memory operations, include and optimise any shared memory parallelism and optimise for single node (e.g. cache and vectorisation) performance.

### 6.1 Code Generation

The PSy layer can be written manually but this is error prone and potentially complex to optimise. The PSyclone code generation system generates the PSy layer so there is no need to write the code manually.

To generate correct PSy layer code, PSyclone needs to understand the arguments and datatypes passed by the algorithm layer and the arguments and datatypes expected by the Kernel layer; it needs to know the name of the Kernel subroutine(s); it needs to know the iteration space that the Kernel(s) is/are written to iterate over; it also needs to know the ordering of Kernels and Built-ins as specified in the algorithm layer. Finally, it needs to know where to place any distributed memory operations.

PSyclone determines the above information by being told the API in question (by the user), by reading the appropriate Kernel and Built-in metadata and by reading the order of Kernels and Built-ins in an `invoke` call (as specified in the algorithm layer).

PSyclone has an API-specific parsing stage which reads the algorithm layer and all associated Kernel metadata. This information is passed to a PSy-generation stage which creates a high level view of the PSy layer. From this high level view the PSy-generation stage can generate the required PSy code.

For example, the following Python code shows a code being parsed, a PSy-generation object being created using the output from the parser and the PSy layer code being generated by the PSy-generation object.

```
from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory

# This example uses version 0.1 of the Dynamo API
api = "dynamo0.1"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Parse the file containing the algorithm specification and  
# return the Abstract Syntax Tree and invokeInfo objects  
ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90", api=api)  
  
# Create the PSy-layer object using the invokeInfo  
psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)  
# Generate the Fortran code for the PSy layer  
print psy.gen
```

## 6.2 API

The PSy-layer of a single algorithm file is represented by the **PSy** class. The PSy class has an **Invokes** object which contain one or more **Invoke** instances (one for each invoke in the algorithm layer). Each **Invoke** has an **InvokeSchedule** object with the PSyIR tree that describes the PSy layer invoke subroutine. This subroutine is called by the Algorithm layer and itself calls one or more kernels and/or implements any required Built-in operations.

All this classes can be specialised in each PSyclone API to support the specific features of the APIs. The class diagram for the above base classes is shown below using the dynamo0.3 API as an illustration. This class diagram was generated from the source code with pyreverse and edited with inkscape.



The InvokeSchedule can currently contain nodes of type: **Loop**, **Kernel**, **Built-in** (see the *Built-ins* section), **Directive** (of various types), **HaloExchange**, or **GlobalSum** (the latter two are only used if distributed memory is supported and is switched on; see the *Distributed Memory* section). The order of the tree (depth first) indicates the order of the associated Fortran code.

PSyclone will initially create a “vanilla” (functionally correct but not optimised) InvokeSchedule. This “vanilla” InvokeSchedule can be modified by changing the objects within it. For example, the order that two Kernel calls appear in the generated code can be changed by changing their order in the tree. The ability to modify this high level view of a InvokeSchedule allows the PSy layer to be optimised for a particular architecture (by applying optimisations such as blocking, loop merging, inlining, OpenMP parallelisation etc.). The tree could be manipulated directly, however, to simplify optimisation, a set of transformations are supplied. These transformations are discussed in the next section.

### 6.2.1 InvokeSchedule visualisation

PSyclone supports visualising an InvokeSchedule (or any other PSyIR node) in two ways. Firstly the *view()* method outputs textual information about the contents of a PSyIR node. If we were to look at the dynamo eg6 example we would see the following output:

```
>>> schedule.view()
InvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_0', dm=True]
  Directive[OMP parallel do]
    Loop[type='dofs', field_space='any_space_1', it_space='dofs']
      BuiltIn setval_X_code(p, z)
      BuiltIn X_innerproduct_Y_code(rs_old, res, z)
    GlobalSum[scalar='rs_old']
```

The above output tells us that the invoke name for the InvokeSchedule we are looking at is *invoke\_0* and that the distributed\_memory option has been switched on. Within the InvokeSchedule is an OpenMP parallel directive containing a loop which itself contains two builtin calls. As the latter of the two builtin calls requires a reduction and distributed memory is switched on, PSyclone has added a GlobalSum call for the appropriate scalar.

Secondly, the *dag()* method (standing for directed acyclic graph), outputs the PSyIR nodes and its data dependencies. By default a file in dot format is output with the name *dag* and a file in svg format is output with the name *dag.svg*. The file name can be changed using the *file\_name* optional argument and the output file format can be changed using the *file\_format* optional argument. The *file\_format* value is simply passed on to graphviz so the graphviz documentation should be consulted for valid formats if svg is not required.

```
>>> schedule.dag(file_name="lovely", file_format="png")
```

---

**Note:** The dag method can be called from any node and will output the dag for that node and all of its children.

---

If we were to look at the dynamo eg6 example we would see the following image:



In the image, all PSyIR nodes with children are split into a start vertex and an end vertex (for example the InvokeSchedule node has both *schedule\_start* and *schedule\_end* vertices). Blue arrows indicate that there is a parent to child relationship (from a start node) or a child to parent relationship (to an end node). Green arrows indicate that a Node depends on another Node later in the schedule (which we call a forward dependence). Therefore the OMP parallel loop must complete before the globalsum is performed. Red arrows indicate that a Node depends on another Node that is earlier in the schedule (which we call a backward dependence). However the direction of the red arrows are reversed to improve the flow of the dag layout. In this example the forward and backward dependence is the same, however this is not always the case. The two built-ins do not depend on each other, so they have no associated green or red arrows.

The dependence graph output gives an indication of whether nodes can be moved within the InvokeSchedule. In this case it is valid to run the builtin's in either order. The underlying dependence analysis used to create this graph is used to determine whether a transformation of a Schedule is valid from the perspective of data dependencies.





## TRANSFORMATIONS

As discussed in the previous section, transformations can be applied to a schedule to modify it. Typically transformations will be used to optimise the PSy layer for a particular architecture, however transformations could be added for other reasons, such as to aid debugging or for performance monitoring.

### 7.1 Finding

Transformations can be imported directly, but the user needs to know what transformations are available. A helper class **TransInfo** is provided to show the available transformations

**class** `psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo` (*module=None, base\_class=None*)

This class provides information about, and access, to the available transformations in this implementation of PSyclone. New transformations will be picked up automatically as long as they subclass the abstract Transformation class.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> print(t.list)
There is 1 transformation available:
  1: SwapTrans, A test transformation
>>> # accessing a transformation by index
>>> trans = t.get_trans_num(1)
>>> # accessing a transformation by name
>>> trans = t.get_trans_name("SwapTrans")
```

**get\_trans\_name** (*name*)

return the transformation with this name (use list() first to see available transformations)

**get\_trans\_num** (*number*)

return the transformation with this number (use list() first to see available transformations)

**list**

return a string with a human readable list of the available transformations

**num\_trans**

return the number of transformations available

## 7.2 Available transformations

Most transformations are generic as the schedule structure is independent of the API, however it often makes sense to specialise these for a particular API by adding API-specific errors checks. Some transformations are API-specific (or specific to a set of APIs e.g. dynamo). Currently these different types of transformation are indicated by their names.

The generic transformations currently available are listed in alphabetical order below (a number of these have specialisations which can be found in the API-specific sections).

---

**Note:** PSyclone currently only supports OpenCL transformations for the GOcean 1.0 API, the OpenACC Data transformation is limited to the NEMO and GOcean 1.0 APIs and the OpenACC Kernels transformation is limited to the NEMO and Dynamo0.3 APIs.

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCTestDataTrans`

Add an OpenACC data region around a list of nodes in the PSyIR. COPYIN, COPYOUT and COPY clauses are added as required.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCTestDataTrans
>>> dtrans = ACCTestDataTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Enclose the kernels
>>> new_sched, _ = dtrans.apply(kernels)
```

**apply** (*node\_list*)

Put the supplied list of nodes within an OpenACC data region.

**Parameters** `node_list` (list of `psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – The list of PSyIR nodes to enclose in the data region.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans`

Adds an OpenACC “enter data” directive to a Schedule. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCEnterDataTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> newschedule.view()

```

**apply** (*sched*)

Adds an OpenACC “enter data” directive to the invoke associated with the supplied Schedule. Any fields accessed by OpenACC kernels within this schedule will be added to this data region in order to ensure they remain on the target device.

**Parameters** *sched* (sub-class of `psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`.) – Schedule to which to add an “enter data” directive.

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans`

Enclose a sub-set of nodes from a Schedule within an OpenACC kernels region (i.e. within “!\$acc kernels” ... “!\$acc end kernels” directives).

For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCKernelsTrans
>>> ktrans = ACCKernelsTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> new_sched, _ = ktrans.apply(kernels)

```

**apply** (*node\_list*, *default\_present=False*)

Enclose the supplied list of PSyIR nodes within an OpenACC Kernels region.

**Parameters**

- **node\_list** (list of `psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – The list of nodes in the PSyIR to enclose.

- **default\_present** (*bool*) – whether or not the kernels region should have the ‘default present’ attribute (indicating that data is already on the accelerator). When using managed memory this option should be False.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento).

---

**class** psyclone.transformations.**ACCLoopTrans**

Adds an OpenACC loop directive to a loop. This directive must be within the scope of some OpenACC Parallel region (at code-generation time).

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCPARALLELTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
# Apply the OpenACC Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
>>>     schedule = newschedule
>>>
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenACC
# PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
```

**apply** (*node*, *collapse=None*, *independent=True*, *sequential=False*)

Apply the ACCLoop transformation to the specified node. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to inserting a directive immediately before a loop, e.g.:

```
!$ACC LOOP
do ...
  ...
end do
```

At code-generation time (when `psyclone.psyGen.ACCLoopDirective.gen_code()` is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) a PARALLEL region.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`.) – the supplied node to which we will apply the Loop transformation.
- **collapse** (*int*) – number of loops to collapse into single iteration space or `None`.
- **independent** (*bool*) – whether to add the “independent” clause to the directive (not strictly necessary within `PARALLEL` regions).

**Returns** (`psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

---

### **class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCTrans`

Create an OpenACC parallel region by inserting directives. This parallel region *must* come after an enter-data directive (see `ACCEnterDataTrans`) or within a data region (see `ACCDDataTrans`). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ptrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCTrans')
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCDDataTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose everything within a single OpenACC PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = ptrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(newschedule)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

### **apply** (*nodes*)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Loops in the schedule within a single parallel region.

**Parameters** **nodes** ((list of) `psyclone.psyGen.Node`.) – a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the nodes argument is not of the correct type.

---

### **class** `psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans`

Apply a colouring transformation to a loop (in order to permit a subsequent parallelisation over colours). For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = ColourTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
>>>
>>> csched.view()
```

**apply** (*node*)

Converts the Loop represented by *node* into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour.

**Parameters** *node* (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – The loop to transform.

**Returns** Tuple of modified schedule and record of transformation

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `:py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans`

Provides a transformation to extract code represented by a subset of the Nodes in the PSyIR of a Schedule into a stand-alone program. Examples are given in descriptions of children classes `DynamoExtractRegionTrans` and `GOceanExtractRegionTrans`.

After applying the transformation the Nodes marked for extraction are children of the `ExtractNode`. Nodes to extract can be individual constructs within an `Invoke` (e.g. Loops containing a `Kernel` or `BuiltIn` call) or entire `Invokes`. This functionality does not support distributed memory.

**apply** (*nodes*)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the Nodes within a Schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the Schedule within a single `Extract` region.

**Parameters** *nodes* ((list of) `psyclone.psyGen.Node`.) – a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Returns** tuple of the modified Schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the *nodes* argument is not of the correct type.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans`

Switches on, or switches off, the inlining of a Kernel subroutine into the PSy layer module. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> inline_trans = KernelModuleInlineTrans()
>>>
>>> ischedule, _ = inline_trans.apply(schedule.children[0].loop_body[0])
>>> ischedule.view()
```

**Warning:** For this transformation to work correctly, the Kernel subroutine must only use data that is passed in by argument, declared locally or included via use association within the subroutine. Two examples where in-lining will not work are:

1. A variable is declared within the module that contains the Kernel subroutine and is then accessed within that Kernel;
2. A variable is included via use association at the module level and accessed within the Kernel subroutine.

The transformation will reject attempts to in-line such kernels.

**apply** (*node*, *inline=True*)

Checks that the node is of the correct type (a Kernel) then marks the Kernel to be inlined, or not, depending on the value of the inline argument. If the inline argument is not passed the Kernel is marked to be inlined.

**Note:** PSyclone does not currently permit module-inlining of transformed kernels (issue #229).

**class** `psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans`

Provides a loop-fuse transformation. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo=parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy=PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import LoopFuseTrans
>>> trans=LoopFuseTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento=trans.apply(schedule.children[0],
>>>                                   schedule.children[1])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

**apply** (*node1*, *node2*)

Fuse the loops represented by node1 and node2.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans`

Provides a transformation to move a node in the tree. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo=parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy=PSyFactory("dynamo0.3").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import MoveTrans
>>> trans=MoveTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0],
>>>                                   schedule.children[2],
>>>                                   position="after")
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

Nodes may only be moved to a new location with the same parent and must not break any dependencies otherwise an exception is raised.

**apply** (*node*, *location*, *position='before'*)

Move the node represented by *node* before location *location* (which is also a node) by default and after if the optional *position* argument is set to 'after'. An exception is raised if the move is invalid.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans`

Switches on/off the generation of an OpenCL PSy layer for a given InvokeSchedule. Additionally, it will generate OpenCL kernels for each of the kernels referenced by the Invoke. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ocl_trans = OCLTrans()
>>> new_sched, _ = ocl_trans.apply(schedule)
```

**apply** (*sched*, *opencl=True*)

Apply the OpenCL transformation to the supplied GOInvokeSchedule. This causes PSyclone to generate an OpenCL version of the corresponding PSy-layer routine. The generated code makes use of the FortCL library (<https://github.com/stfc/FortCL>) in order to manage the OpenCL device directly from Fortran.

**Parameters**

- **sched** (`psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule`) – InvokeSchedule to transform.
- **opencl** (*bool*) – whether or not to enable OpenCL generation.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

Adds an orphaned OpenMP directive to a loop. i.e. the directive must be inside the scope of some other OMP Parallel REGION. This condition is tested at code-generation time. The optional 'reprod' argument in the apply method decides whether standard OpenMP reduction support is to be used (which is not reproducible) or whether a manual reproducible reproduction is to be used.

**Parameters** **omp\_schedule** (*str*) – The OpenMP schedule to use.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> print psy.invokes.names
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
>>> # Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
>>> # in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
>>>     schedule = newschedule
>>>
>>> # Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
>>> # PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
>>>
```

**apply** (*node*, *reprod=None*)

Apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation to the specified node in a Schedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to wrapping the generated code with directives like so:

```
!$OMP DO
do ...
...
end do
!$OMP END DO
```

At code-generation time (when `OMPLoopDirective.gen_code()` is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) an OpenMP PARALLEL region.

The optional *reprod* argument will cause a reproducible reduction to be generated if it is set to `True`, otherwise the default value (as read from the `psyclone.cfg` file) will be used. Note, reproducible in this case means obtaining the same results with the same number of OpenMP threads, not for different numbers of OpenMP threads.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the supplied node to which we will apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation
- **reprod** (*Boolean or None*) – optional argument to determine whether to generate reproducible OpenMP reductions (`True`) or not (`False`). The default value is `None` which will cause PSyclone to look up a default value

**Returns** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**omp\_schedule**

Returns the OpenMP schedule that will be specified by this transformation. The default schedule is 'static'.

---

```
class psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelLoopTrans (omp_schedule='static')
```

Adds an OpenMP PARALLEL DO directive to a loop.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import OMPParallelLoopTrans
>>> trans = OMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

**apply** (*node*)

Apply an OMPParallelLoop Transformation to the supplied node (which must be a Loop). In the generated code this corresponds to wrapping the Loop with directives:

```
!$OMP PARALLEL DO ...  
do ...  
...  
end do  
!$OMP END PARALLEL DO
```

**Parameters** `node` (`psyclone.f2pygen.DoGen`) – the node (loop) to which to apply the transformation.

**Returns** Two-tuple of transformed schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `:py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans`

Create an OpenMP PARALLEL region by inserting directives. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse  
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError  
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError  
>>> api = "gocean1.0"  
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"  
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")  
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)  
>>>  
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo  
>>> t = TransInfo()  
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('GOceanOMPLoopTrans')  
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')  
>>>  
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule  
>>> schedule.view()  
>>> new_schedule = schedule  
>>>  
>>> # Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop  
>>> # in the schedule  
>>> for child in schedule.children:  
>>>     newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child)  
>>>     schedule = newschedule  
>>>  
>>> # Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP  
>>> # PARALLEL region  
>>> newschedule, _ = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)  
>>> newschedule.view()
```

**apply** (*nodes*)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Loops in the schedule within a single parallel region.

**Parameters** `nodes` ((list of) `psyclone.psyGen.Node`.) – a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the nodes argument is not of the correct type.

---

**Note:** PSyclone does not support (distributed-memory) halo swaps or global sums within OpenMP parallel regions. Attempting to create a parallel region for a set of nodes that includes halo swaps or global sums will produce an error.

In such cases it may be possible to re-order the nodes in the Schedule such that the halo swaps or global sums are performed outside the parallel region. The *MoveTrans* transformation may be used for this.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans`

Create a profile region around a list of statements. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> p_trans = t.get_trans_name('ProfileRegionTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose all children within a single profile region
>>> newschedule, _ = p_trans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

**apply** (*nodes*)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the schedule within a single profiler region.

**Parameters** *nodes* (`psyclone.psygen.Node` or list of `psyclone.psygen.Node`) – can be a single node or a list of nodes.

## 7.3 Kernels

PSyclone supports the transformation of Kernels as well as PSy-layer code. However, the transformation of kernels to produce new kernels brings with it additional considerations, especially regarding the naming of the resulting kernels. PSyclone supports two use cases:

1. the HPC expert wishes to optimise the same kernel in different ways, depending on where/how it is called;
2. the HPC expert wishes to transform the kernel just once and have the new version used throughout the Algorithm file.

The second case is really an optimisation of the first for the case where the same set of transformations is applied to every instance of a given kernel.

Since PSyclone is run separately for each Algorithm in a given application, ensuring that there are no name clashes for kernels in the application as a whole requires that some state is maintained between PSyclone invocations. This is achieved by requiring that the same kernel output directory is used for every invocation of PSyclone when building a given application. However, this is under the control of the user and therefore it is possible to use the same output directory for a subset of algorithms that require the same kernel transformation and then a different directory for another subset requiring a different transformation. Of course, such use would require care when building and linking the application since the differently-optimised kernels would have the same names.

By default, transformed kernels are written to the current working directory. Alternatively, the user may specify the location to which to write the modified code via the `-okern` command-line flag.

In order to support the two use cases given above, PSyclone supports two different kernel-renaming schemes: “multiple” and “single” (specified via the `--kernel-renaming` command-line flag). In the default, “multiple” scheme, PSyclone ensures that each transformed kernel is given a unique name (with reference to the contents of the kernel output directory). In the “single” scheme, it is assumed that any given kernel that is transformed is always transformed in the same way (or left unchanged) and thus just one transformed version of it is created. This assumption is checked by examining the Fortran code for any pre-existing transformed version of that kernel. If another transformed version of that kernel exists and does not match that created by the current transformation then PSyclone will raise an exception.

### 7.3.1 Rules

Kernel code that is to be transformed is subject to certain restrictions. These rules are intended to make kernel transformations as robust as possible, in particular by limiting the amount of code that must be parsed by PSyclone (via `fparses`). The rules are as follows:

- 1) Any variable or procedure accessed by a kernel must either be explicitly declared or named in the `only` clause of a module `use` statement within the scope of the subroutine containing the kernel implementation. This means that:
  - 1) Kernel subroutines are forbidden from accessing data using `COMMON` blocks;
  - 2) Kernel subroutines are forbidden from calling procedures declared via the `EXTERN` statement;
  - 3) Kernel subroutines must not access data or procedures made available via their parent (containing) module.
- 2) The full Fortran source of a kernel must be available to PSyclone. This includes the source of any modules from which it accesses either routines or data. (However, kernel routines are permitted to make use of Fortran intrinsic routines.)

For instance, consider the following Fortran module containing the `bc_ssh_code` kernel:

```
module boundary_conditions_mod
  real :: forbidden_var

contains

  subroutine bc_ssh_code(ji, jj, istep, ssh)
    use kind_params_mod, only: go_wp
    use model_mod, only: rdt
    integer,                intent(in)    :: ji, jj, istep
    real(go_wp), dimension(:, :), intent(inout) :: ssh
    real(go_wp) :: rtime

    rtime = real(istep, go_wp) * rdt
    ...
  end subroutine bc_ssh_code
end module boundary_conditions_mod
```

Since the kernel subroutine accesses data (the `rdt` variable) from the `model_mod` module, the source of that module must be available to PSyclone if a transformation is applied to this kernel. Should `rdt` not actually be defined in `model_mod` (i.e. `model_mod` itself imports it from another module) then the source containing its definition must also be available to PSyclone. Note that the rules forbid the `bc_ssh_code` kernel from accessing the `forbidden_var` variable that is available to it from the enclosing module scope.

---

**Note:** these rules *only* apply to kernels that are the target of PSyclone kernel transformations.

---

## 7.3.2 Available Kernel Transformations

PSyclone currently provides just one kernel transformation:

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans`

Transform a kernel subroutine by adding a “!\$acc routine” directive (causing it to be compiled for the OpenACC accelerator device). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCRoutineTrans
>>> rtrans = ACCRoutineTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kern = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> newkern, _ = rtrans.apply(kern)
```

**apply** (*kern*)

Modifies the AST of the supplied kernel so that it contains an ‘!\$acc routine’ OpenACC directive.

**Parameters** *kern* (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern`) – The kernel object to transform.

**Returns** (transformed kernel, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if we fail to find the subroutine corresponding to the kernel object.

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

**Return type** `str`

**validate** (*kern*)

Perform checks that the supplied kernel can be transformed.

**Parameters** *kern* (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern`) – the kernel which is the target of the transformation.

**Raises**

- *TransformationError* – if the target kernel is a built-in.
- *TransformationError* – if any of the symbols in the kernel are accessed via a module use statement.

---

**Note:** PSyclone does not currently permit transformed kernels to be module-inlined. (Issue #229.)

---

## 7.4 Applying

Transformations can be applied either interactively or through a script.

### 7.4.1 Interactive

To apply a transformation interactively we first parse and analyse the code. This allows us to generate a “vanilla” PSy layer. For example ...

```
from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory

# This example uses version 0.1 of the Dynamo API
api = "dynamo0.1"

# Parse the file containing the algorithm specification and
# return the Abstract Syntax Tree and invokeInfo objects
ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90", api=api)

# Create the PSy-layer object using the invokeInfo
psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)

# Optionally generate the vanilla PSy layer fortran
print psy.gen
```

We then extract the particular schedule we are interested in. For example ...

```
# List the various invokes that the PSy layer contains
print psy.invokes.names

# Get the required invoke
invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_v3_kernel_type')

# Get the schedule associated with the required invoke
schedule = invoke.schedule
schedule.view()
```

Now we have the schedule we can create and apply a transformation to it to create a new schedule and then replace the original schedule with the new one. For example ...

```
# Get the list of possible loop transformations
from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
t = TransInfo()
print t.list

# Create an OpenMPLoop-transformation
ol = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelLoopTrans')

# Apply it to the loop schedule of the selected invoke
new_schedule,memento = ol.apply(schedule.children[0])
new_schedule.view()

# Replace the original loop schedule of the selected invoke
# with the new, transformed schedule
invoke.schedule=new_schedule
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Generate the Fortran code for the new PSy layer
print psy.gen
```

More examples of use of the interactive application of transformations can be found in the `runme*.py` files within the `examples/dynamo/eg1` and `examples/dynamo/eg2` directories. Some simple examples of the use of transformations are also given in the previous section.

## 7.4.2 Script

PSyclone provides a Python script (**psyclone**) that can be used from the command line to generate PSy layer code and to modify algorithm layer code appropriately. By default this script will generate “vanilla” (unoptimised) PSy layer code. For example:

```
> psyclone algspec.f90
> psyclone -oalg alg.f90 -opsy psy.f90 -api dynamo0.3 algspec.f90
```

The **psyclone** script has an optional **-s** flag which allows the user to specify a script file to modify the PSy layer as required. Script files may be specified without a path. For example:

```
> psyclone -s opt.py algspec.f90
```

In this case the Python search path **PYTHONPATH** will be used to try to find the script file.

Alternatively, script files may be specified with a path. In this case the file is expected to be found in the specified location. For example ...

```
> psyclone -s ./opt.py algspec.f90
> psyclone -s ../scripts/opt.py algspec.f90
> psyclone -s /home/me/PSyclone/scripts/opt.py algspec.f90
```

PSyclone also provides the same functionality via a function (which is what the **psyclone** script calls internally).

```
psyclone.generator.generate(filename, api="", kernel_path="", script_name=None,
                             line_length=False, distributed_memory=None, kern_out_path="",
                             kern_naming='multiple')
```

Takes a PSyclone algorithm specification as input and outputs the associated generated algorithm and psy codes suitable for compiling with the specified kernel(s) and support infrastructure. Uses the `parse.algorithm.parse()` function to parse the algorithm specification, the `psyGen.PSy` class to generate the PSy code and the `alg_gen.Alg` class to generate the modified algorithm code.

### Parameters

- **filename** (*str*) – The file containing the algorithm specification.
- **kernel\_path** (*str*) – The directory from which to recursively search for the files containing the kernel source (if different from the location of the algorithm specification).
- **script\_name** (*str*) – A script file that can apply optimisations to the PSy layer (can be a path to a file or a filename that relies on the PYTHONPATH to find the module).
- **line\_length** (*bool*) – A logical flag specifying whether we care about line lengths being longer than 132 characters. If so, the input (algorithm and kernel) code is checked to make sure that it conforms. The default is False.
- **distributed\_memory** (*bool*) – A logical flag specifying whether to generate distributed memory code. The default is set in the config.py file.
- **kern\_out\_path** (*str*) – Directory to which to write transformed kernel code.

- **kern\_naming** (*bool*) – the scheme to use when re-naming transformed kernels.

**Returns** 2-tuple containing fparser1 ASTs for the algorithm code and the psy code.

**Return type** (fparser.one.block\_statements.BeginSource, fparser.one.block\_statements.Module)

**Raises**

- **IOError** – if the filename or search path do not exist
- **GenerationError** – if an invalid API is specified.
- **GenerationError** – if an invalid kernel-renaming scheme is specified.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", kernel_path="src/kernels")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", script_name="optimise.py")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", line_length=True)
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", distributed_memory=False)
```

A valid script file must contain a **trans** function which accepts a **PSy** object as an argument and returns a **PSy** object, i.e.:

```
def trans(psy)
    ...
    return psy
```

It is up to the script what it does with the **PSy** object. The example below does the same thing as the example in the *Interactive* section.

```
def trans(psy):
    from psyclone.transformations import OMPParallelLoopTrans
    invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_v3_kernel_type')
    schedule = invoke.schedule
    ol = OMPParallelLoopTrans()
    new_schedule, _ = ol.apply(schedule.children[0])
    invoke.schedule = new_schedule
    return psy
```

Of course the script may apply as many transformations as is required for a particular schedule and may apply transformations to all the schedules (i.e. invokes) contained within the **PSy** layer.

Examples of the use of transformation scripts can be found in the `examples/dynamo/eg3` and `examples/dynamo/scripts` directories. Please read the `examples/dynamo/README` file first as it explains how to run the examples (and see also the `examples/check_examples` script).

## 7.5 OpenMP

OpenMP is added to a code by using transformations. The three transformations currently supported allow the addition of an **OpenMP Parallel** directive, an **OpenMP Do** directive and an **OpenMP Parallel Do** directive, respectively, to a code.

The generic versions of these three transformations (i.e. ones that theoretically work for all APIs) were given in the *Available transformations* section. The API-specific versions of these transformations are described in the API-specific sections of this document.



### 7.5.1 Reductions

PSyclone supports parallel scalar reductions. If a scalar reduction is specified in the Kernel metadata (see the API-specific sections for details) then PSyclone ensures the appropriate reduction is performed.

In the case of distributed memory, PSyclone will add **GlobalSum's** at the appropriate locations. As can be inferred by the name, only “summation” reductions are currently supported for distributed memory.

In the case of an OpenMP parallel loop the standard reduction support will be used by default. For example

```
!$omp parallel do, reduction(+:x)
!loop
!$omp end parallel do
```

OpenMP reductions do not guarantee to give bit reproducible results for different runs of the same problem even if the same problem is run using the same resources. The reason for this is that the order in which data is reduced is not mandated.

Therefore, an additional **reprod** option has been added to the **OpenMP Do** transformation. If the **reprod** option is set to “True” then the OpenMP reduction support is replaced with local per-thread reductions which are reduced serially after the loop has finished. This implementation guarantees to give bit-wise reproducible results for different runs of the same problem using the same resources, but will not bit-wise compare if the code is rerun with different numbers of OpenMP threads.

### 7.5.2 Restrictions

If two reductions are used within an OpenMP region and the same variable is used for both reductions then PSyclone will raise an exception. In this case the solution is to use a different variable for each reduction.

PSyclone does not support (distributed-memory) halo swaps or global sums within OpenMP parallel regions. Attempting to create a parallel region for a set of nodes that includes halo swaps or global sums will produce an error. In such cases it may be possible to re-order the nodes in the Schedule using the *MoveTrans* transformation.

## 7.6 OpenCL

OpenCL is added to a code by using the *OCLTrans* transformation (see the *Available transformations* Section above). Currently this transformation is only supported for the GOcean1.0 API and is applied to the whole InvokeSchedule of an Invoke. This transformation will add an OpenCL driver infrastructure to the PSy layer and generate an OpenCL kernel for each of the Invoke kernels. This means that all kernels in that Invoke will be executed on the OpenCL device. The PSy-layer OpenCL code generated by PSyclone is still Fortran and makes use of the FortCL library (<https://github.com/stfc/FortCL>) to access OpenCL functionality. It also relies upon the OpenCL support provided by the *dl\_esm\_inf* library ([https://github.com/stfc/dl\\_esm\\_inf](https://github.com/stfc/dl_esm_inf)).

At the moment we don't apply additional transformations to OpenCL kernels, this means that all references to the same kernel will have an identical OpenCL generated output (with identical names). Nevertheless, we can use the *-kernel-renaming* psyclone argument to just generate a single output file (with the *single* option) or multiple index postfixed (identical) versions of the kernel (with the *multi* option, which is the default one). Because OpenCL kernels are linked at run-time, it will be up to the run-time environment to specify which of the kernels to use. For instance, one could merge multiple kernels together in a single binary file and use the *PSYCLONE\_KERNELS\_FILE* provided by the FortCL library.

The introduction of OpenCL code generation in PSyclone has been largely motivated by the need to target Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA) accelerator devices. It is not currently designed to target the other compute devices that OpenCL supports (such as GPUs and multi-core CPUs) but this is a potentially fruitful area for future work.

## 7.7 OpenACC

PSyclone supports the generation of code targetting GPUs through the addition of OpenACC directives. This is achieved by a user applying various OpenACC transformations to the PSyIR before the final Fortran code is generated. The steps to parallelisation are very similar to those in OpenMP with the added complexity of managing the movement of data to and from the GPU device. For the latter task PSyclone provides the `ACCDataTrans` and `ACCEnterDataTrans` transformations, as described in the [Available transformations](#) Section above. These two transformations add statically- and dynamically-scoped data regions, respectively. The former manages what data is on the remote device for a specific section of code while the latter allows run-time control of data movement. This second option is essential for minimising data movement as, without it, PSyclone-generated code would move data to and from the device upon every entry/exit of an `Invoke`. The first option is mainly provided as an aid to incremental porting and/or debugging of an OpenACC application as it provides explicit control over what data is present on a device for a given (part of an) `Invoke` routine.

The PGI compiler provides an alternative approach to controlling data movement through its ‘unified memory’ option (`-ta=tesla:managed`). When this is enabled the compiler itself takes on the task of ensuring that data is copied to/from the GPU when required. (Note that this approach can struggle with Fortran code containing derived types however.)

As well as ensuring the correct data is copied to and from the remote device, OpenACC directives must also be added to a code in order to tell the compiler how it should be parallelised. PSyclone provides the `ACCKernelsTrans`, `ACCParallelTrans` and `ACCLoopTrans` transformations for this purpose. The simplest of these is `ACCKernelsTrans` (currently only supported for the NEMO and Dynamo0.3 APIs) which encloses the code represented by a sub-tree of the PSyIR within an OpenACC `kernels` region. This essentially gives free-reign to the compiler to automatically parallelise any suitable loops within the specified region. An example of the use of `ACCDataTrans` and `ACCKernelsTrans` may be found in `PSyclone/examples/nemo/eg3` and an example of `ACCKernelsTrans` may be found in `PSyclone/examples/dynamo/eg14`.

However, as with any “automatic” approach, a more performant solution can almost always be obtained by providing the compiler with more explicit direction on how to parallelise the code. The `ACCParallelTrans` and `ACCLoopTrans` transformations allow the user to define thread-parallel regions and, within those, define which loops should be parallelised. For an example of their use please see `PSyclone/examples/gocean/eg2` or `PSyclone/examples/dynamo/eg14`.

In order for a given section of code to be executed on a GPU, any routines called from within that section must also have been compiled for the GPU. This then requires either that any such routines are in-lined or that the `OpenACC routine` directive be added to any such routines. This situation will occur routinely in those PSyclone APIs that use the PSyKAl separation of concerns since the user-supplied kernel routines are called from within PSyclone-generated loops in the PSy layer. PSyclone therefore provides the `ACCRoutineTrans` transformation which, given a `Kernel` node in the PSyIR, creates a new version of that kernel with the `routine` directive added. Again, please see `PSyclone/examples/gocean/eg2` for an example. This transformation is currently not supported for kernels in the Dynamo0.3 API.

## 7.8 SIR

It is currently not possible for PSyclone to output SIR code without using a script. Examples of such scripts are given in example 4 for the NEMO API. Whilst there are no transformations relating to the generation of the SIR, a script is associated with transformations and it is possible that transformations could be useful in the future e.g. to mark which bits of code should be optimised using the dawn tool.

## DISTRIBUTED MEMORY

PSyclone supports the generation of code for distributed memory machines. When this option is switched on, PSyclone takes on responsibility for both performance and correctness, as described below.

### 8.1 Correctness

PSyclone is responsible for adding appropriate distributed memory communication calls to the PSy layer to ensure that the distributed memory code runs correctly. For example, a stencil operation will require halo exchanges between the different processes.

The burden of correctly placing distributed memory communication calls has traditionally been born by the user. However, PSyclone is able to determine the placing of these within the PSy-layer, thereby freeing the user from this responsibility. Thus, the Algorithm and Kernel code remain the same, irrespective of whether the target architecture does or does not require a distributed memory solution.

### 8.2 Performance

PSyclone adds **HaloExchange** and **GlobalSum** objects to the generated PSyIR **InvokeSchedule** at the required locations. The halo-exchange and global-sum objects are exposed here for the purposes of optimisation. For example the halo-exchange and/or global-sum objects may be moved in the schedule (via appropriate transformations) to enable overlap of computation with communication.

---

**Note:** When these optimisations are implemented, add a reference to the [Transformations](#) Section.

---

A halo exchange is required with distributed memory when a processor requires data from its halo and the halo information is out of date. One example is where a field is written to and then read using a stencil access. Halo exchanges have performance implications so should only be used where necessary.

A global sum is required with distributed memory when a scalar is written to. Global sums can have performance implications so should only be used where necessary. Global sums currently only occur in certain Built-in kernels. The description of Built-ins indicates when this is the case.

### 8.3 Implementation

Within the contents of an `invoke()` call, PSyclone is able to statically determine which communication calls are required and where they should be placed. However, PSyclone has no information on what happens outside `invoke()` calls and thus is unable to statically determine whether communication is required between these calls. The solution

we use is to add run-time flags in the PSy layer to keep track of whether data has been written to and read from. These flags are then used to determine whether communication calls are required upon entry to an `invoke()`.

## 8.4 Control

Support for distributed memory can be switched on or off with the default being on. The default can be changed permanently by modifying the `DISTRIBUTED_MEMORY` variable in the `psyclone.cfg` configuration file to `false` (see [Configuration](#)).

Distributed memory can be switched on or off from the `psyclone` script using the `-dm/--dist_mem` or `-nodm/--no_dist_mem` flags, respectively.

For interactive access, the distributed memory option can be changed interactively from the `PSyFactory` class by setting the optional `distributed_memory` flag; for example:

```
psy = PSyFactory(api=api, distributed_memory=False)
```

Similarly the distributed memory option can be changed interactively from the `generate` function by setting the optional `distributed_memory` flag, e.g.:

```
psy, alg = generate("file.f90", distributed_memory=False).
```

## 8.5 Status

Distributed memory support is currently limited to the `dynamo0.3` API. The remaining APIs ignore the distributed memory flag and continue to produce code without any distributed memory functionality, irrespective of its value.

## BUILT-INS

Built-ins (named by analogy with the native functionality provided by Python) are operations which can be specified within an invoke call in the algorithm layer but do not require an associated kernel to be implemented as they are provided directly by the infrastructure.

One use of Built-ins is for commonly used operations. In this case Built-ins simplify the use of the system as users do not need to write kernel routines. Built-ins also offer a potential performance advantage as they provide a specification of what is required without an implementation. Therefore the PSy layer is free to implement these operations in whatever way it chooses.

**Note:** In general, PSyclone will need to know the types of the arguments being passed to any Built-ins. The parser obtains this information from an API-specific file that contains the metadata for all Built-in operations supported for that API.

## 9.1 Example

In the following example, the invoke call includes a call to a Built-in (`setval_c`) and a user-supplied kernel (`matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type`). The Built-in sets all values in the field `Ax` to `0.0`. Notice that, unlike the kernel call, no use association is required for the Built-in since it is provided as part of the environment (*c.f.* Fortran intrinsics such as `sin()`).

```

subroutine jacobi_solver_algorithm(lhs, rhs, mm, mesh, n_iter)
  use matrix_vector_mm_mod, only: matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
  integer,          intent(in)      :: n_iter
  type(field_type), intent(inout) :: lhs, rhs
  type(operator_type), intent(inout) :: mm
  type(mesh_type),    intent(in)     :: mesh
  type(field_type)     :: Ax, lumped_weight, res

  real(kind=r_def), parameter :: MU = 0.9_r_def
  ...

  do iter = 1, n_iter
    call invoke( setval_c(Ax, 0.0) )
    call invoke( matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type(Ax, lhs, mm) )
    ...
  end do

end subroutine jacobi_solver_algorithm

```

Below is an example of a kernel that is consistent with the `matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type` kernel specified in the example above.

```

module matrix_vector_mm_mod
  type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
  private
  type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
    arg_type(GH_FIELD,    GH_INC,  ANY_SPACE_1),      &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD,    GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1),      &
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_1) &
  /)
  integer :: iterates_over = CELLS
contains
  procedure, nopass :: matrix_vector_mm_code
end type
contains
  subroutine matrix_vector_mm_code(cell,      &
                                   nlayers,   &
                                   lhs, x,    &
                                   ncell_3d,  &
                                   mass_matrix, &
                                   ndf, undf, map)
  end subroutine matrix_vector_mm_code
end module matrix_vector_mm_mod

```

We now translate the algorithm layer code and generate the psy layer code. The algorithm code is assumed to be in a file call `solver_mod.x90`. In this case we use the top level python interface. See the [API](#) section for different ways to translate/generate code.

```

>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("solver_mod.x90")
>>> print alg
>>> print psy

```

The resultant generated algorithm code is given below.

Ignoring the difference in case (which is due to the output format of the code parser) the differences between the original algorithm code and the translated algorithm code are:

- the generic calls to `invoke` have been replaced by specific `CALL invoke_xx`. The calls within the `invoke` are removed, as are duplicate arguments and any literals leaving the three fields being passed in.
- a use statement is added for the each of the new `CALL invoke_xx` which will call the generated PSy layer code.

The existence of a call to a Built-in has made no difference at this point:

```

SUBROUTINE jacobi_solver_algorithm(lhs, rhs, mm, mesh, n_iter)
  USE solver_mod_psy, ONLY: invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
  USE solver_mod_psy, ONLY: invoke_4
  INTEGER, intent(in) :: n_iter
  TYPE(field_type), intent(inout) :: lhs, rhs
  TYPE(operator_type), intent(inout) :: mm
  TYPE(mesh_type), intent(in) :: mesh
  TYPE(field_type) ax, lumped_weight, res

  REAL(KIND=r_def), parameter :: mu = 0.9_r_def

  INTEGER iter

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

INTEGER rhs_fs
TYPE(function_space_type) fs
...
DO iter = 1,n_iter
  CALL invoke_4(ax)
  CALL invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type(ax, lhs, mm)
  ...
END DO
END SUBROUTINE jacobi_solver_algorithm

```

A vanilla (not optimised) version of the generated PSy layer is given below. As expected the kernel code is called from the PSy layer. However, in the case of the *setval\_c* Built-in, the code for this has been written directly into the PSy layer (the loop setting *ax\_proxy%data(df) = 0.0*). This example illustrates that Built-ins may be implemented in whatever way the generator sees fit with no change to the algorithm and kernel layers.

```

MODULE solver_mod_psy
...
SUBROUTINE invoke_4(ax)
  USE mesh_mod, ONLY: mesh_type
  TYPE(field_type), intent(inout) :: ax
  INTEGER df
  INTEGER undf_any_space_1
  TYPE(field_proxy_type) ax_proxy
  !
  ! Initialise field proxies
  !
  ax_proxy = ax%get_proxy()
  !
  ! Initialise sizes and allocate any basis arrays for any_space_1
  !
  undf_any_space_1 = ax_proxy%vspace%get_undf()
  !
  ...
  ! Call our kernels
  !
  DO df=1,undf_any_space_1
    ax_proxy%data(df) = 0.0
  END DO
  !
  ...
  !
END SUBROUTINE invoke_4
SUBROUTINE invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type(ax, lhs, mm)
  USE matrix_vector_mm_mod, ONLY: matrix_vector_mm_code
  ...
  TYPE(field_type), intent(inout) :: ax, lhs
  TYPE(operator_type), intent(inout) :: mm
  ...
  !
  ! Initialise field proxies
  !
  ax_proxy = ax%get_proxy()
  lhs_proxy = lhs%get_proxy()
  mm_proxy = mm%get_proxy()
  !
  ! Initialise number of layers

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

!
nlayers = ax_proxy%vspace%get_nlayers()
!
! Initialise sizes and allocate any basis arrays for any_space_1
!
ndf_any_space_1 = ax_proxy%vspace%get_ndf()
undf_any_space_1 = ax_proxy%vspace%get_undf()
!
...
DO cell=1,mesh%get_last_halo_cell(1)
!
  map_any_space_1 => ax_proxy%vspace%get_cell_dofmap(cell)
!
  CALL matrix_vector_mm_code(cell, nlayers, ax_proxy%data, &
                             lhs_proxy%data, mm_proxy%ncell_3d, &
                             mm_proxy%local_stencil, ndf_any_space_1, &
                             undf_any_space_1, map_any_space_1)

  ...
!
END DO
!
...
!
END SUBROUTINE invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
...
END MODULE solver_mod_psy

```

This example is distributed with PSyclone and can be found in <PSYCLONEHOME>/examples/dynamo/eg4.

## 9.2 Supported Built-in operations

The list of supported Built-ins is API-specific and therefore is described under the documentation of each API.

## 9.3 Adding new additional Built-in operations

1. Identify the PSyclone source file for the API to be extended. *e.g.* for dynamo0.3 it is `src/dynamo0p3_builtins.py`.
2. Edit this source file to create the class for this new call. It must inherit from the API-specific parent class for Built-in operations (`DynBuiltInKern` for dynamo0.3).
3. Implement `__str__` and `gen_code()` methods for this new class.
4. Add the name of the new Built-in operation and its corresponding class to the `BUILTIN_MAP` dictionary in that source file.
5. Add metadata describing this call to the appropriate file specified in the `BUILTIN_DEFINITIONS_FILE` in that source file. For dynamo0.3 this is `dynamo0p3_builtins_mod.f90`.
6. Add relevant tests to the PSyclone test file for the API to be extended. *e.g.* for dynamo0.3 it is `src/tests/dynamo0p3_builtins_test.py`. The tests rely on single\_invoke Fortran examples in the relevant `src/tests/test_files/` subfolder.



7. Add an appropriate Fortran `single_invoke` example for the new Built-in in the relevant `src/tests/test_files/` subfolder. *e.g.* for `dynamo0.3` it is `src/tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/`. Names of examples follow the template `<category.number>.<subcategory.number>_<single_invoke_name>.f90`. *e.g.* for `dynamo0.3` `<category.number>` is 15.
8. Document the new Built-in in the documentation of the relevant API (*e.g.* `doc/dynamo0p3.rst`).

If the API being extended does not currently support any Built-ins then the `BUILTIN_MAP` and `BUILTIN_DEFINITIONS_FILE` module variables must be added to the source file for the API. A Fortran module file must be created in the PSyclone `src` directory (with the name specified in `BUILTIN_DEFINITIONS_FILE`) containing metadata describing the Built-in operations. Finally, `parse.get_builtin_defs()` must be extended to import `BUILTIN_MAP` and `BUILTIN_DEFINITIONS_FILE` for this API.



## DYNAMO0.3 API

This section describes the Dynamo0.3 application programming interface (API). This API explains what a user needs to write in order to make use of the Dynamo0.3 API in PSyclone.

As with the majority of PSyclone APIs, the Dynamo0.3 API specifies how a user needs to write the algorithm layer and the kernel layer to allow PSyclone to generate the PSy layer. These algorithm and kernel APIs are discussed separately in the following sections.

The Dynamo0.3 API supports the Met Office's finite element (hereafter FEM) based GungHo dynamical core (see *Introduction*). The Met Office Collaboration Wiki (login required) provides more detailed information about the dynamical core's [formulation](#) and [data model](#).

### 10.1 Algorithm

The general requirements for the structure of an Algorithm are explained in the *Algorithm layer* section. This section explains the Dynamo0.3-specific specialisations and extensions.

#### 10.1.1 Example

An example Dynamo0.3 API invoke call is given below with various different types of objects supported by the API. These different objects and their use are discussed in the following sections.

```
real(kind=r_def)           :: scalar1
integer(kind=i_def)        :: stencil_extent
type(field_type)           :: field1, field2, field3
type(field_type)           :: field5(3), field6(3)
type(quadrature_type)      :: qr
type(operator_type)        :: operator1
type(columnwise_operator_type) :: cma_op1
...
call invoke( kernell(field1, field2, operator1, qr),           &
             builtin1(scalar1, field2, field3),             &
             kernel2(field1, stencil_extent, field3, scalar1), &
             assembly_kernel(cma_op1, operator1),           &
             name="some_calculation"                        &
           )
call invoke( prolong_kernel_type(field1, field4),             &
             restrict_kernel_type(field5, field6)
           )
```

Please see the *Algorithm layer* section for a description of the name argument.

Objects in the Dynamo0.3 API can be categorised by their functionality as data types and information that specifies supported operations on a particular data type. The above example introduces four of five data types supported by the Dynamo0.3 API: field, scalar, operator and column-wise operator (field vector is the fifth). `qr` represents a quadrature object which provides information required by a kernel to operate on fields (see section [Quadrature](#) for more details).

### 10.1.2 Field

Dynamo0.3 API fields, identified with `GH_FIELD` metadata, represent FEM discretisations of various dynamical core prognostic and diagnostic variables. In FEM, variables are discretised by placing them into a function space (see [Supported Function Spaces](#)) from which they inherit a polynomial expansion via the basis functions of that space. Field values at points within a cell are evaluated as the sum of a set of basis functions multiplied by coefficients which are the data points. Points of evaluation are determined by a quadrature object ([Quadrature](#)) and are independent of the function space the field is on. Placement of field data points, also called degrees of freedom (“dof”), is determined by the function space the field is on.

### 10.1.3 Field Vector

Depending on the function space a field lives on, the field data at a point can be a scalar or a vector (see [Supported Function Spaces](#) for the list of scalar and vector function spaces). There is an additional option which specifies whether the data itself is vector valued and it usually refers to bundles of scalar valued fields. Field vectors are represented as `GH_FIELD*N` where `N` is the size of the vector. The 3D coordinate field, for example, has (`x`, `y`, `z`) scalar values at the nodes and therefore has a vector size of 3.

### 10.1.4 Scalar

In Dynamo 0.3 API a scalar is a single value variable that can be either real or integer. Real scalars are identified with `GH_REAL` and integer scalars are identified with `GH_INTEGER` metadata.

### 10.1.5 Operator

Represents a matrix constructed on a per-cell basis using Local Matrix Assembly (LMA) and is identified with `GH_OPERATOR` metadata.

### 10.1.6 Column-Wise Operator

The Dynamo 0.3 API has support for the construction and use of column-wise/Column Matrix Assembly (CMA) operators whose metadata identifier is `GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR`. As the name suggests, these are operators constructed for a whole column of the mesh. These are themselves constructed from the Local Matrix Assembly (LMA) operators of each cell in the column. The rules governing Kernels that have CMA operators as arguments are given in the [Kernel](#) section below.

There are three recognised Kernel types involving CMA operations; construction, application (including inverse application) and matrix-matrix. The following example sketches-out what the use of such kernels might look like in the Algorithm layer:

```
use field_mod, only: field_type
use operator_mod, only : operator_type, columnwise_operator_type
type(field_type) :: field1, field2, field3
type(operator_type) :: lma_op1, lma_op2
type(columnwise_operator_type) :: cma_op1, cma_op2, cma_op3
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

real(kind=r_def) :: alpha
...
call invoke(
    assembly_kernel(cma_op1, lma_op1, lma_op2),      &
    assembly_kernel2(cma_op2, lma_op1, lma_op2, field3), &
    apply_kernel(field1, field2, cma_op1),          &
    matrix_matrix_kernel(cma_op3, cma_op1, alpha, cma_op2), &
    apply_kernel(field3, field1, cma_op3),          &
    name="cma_example")

```

The above invoke uses two LMA operators to construct the CMA operator `cma_op1`. A second CMA operator, `cma_op2`, is assembled from the same two LMA operators but also uses a field. The first of these CMA operators is then applied to `field2` and the result stored in `field1` (assuming that the metadata for `apply_kernel` specifies that it is the first field argument that is written to). The two CMA operators are then combined to produce a third, `cma_op3`. This is then applied to `field1` and the result stored in `field3`.

Note that PSyclone identifies the type of kernels performing Column-Wise operations based on their arguments as described in metadata (see [Rules for Kernels that work with CMA Operators](#) below). The names of the kernels in the above example are purely illustrative and are not used by PSyclone when determining kernel type.

A full example of CMA operator construction is available in `examples/dynamo/eg7`.

### 10.1.7 Quadrature

Kernels conforming to the Dynamo 0.3 API may require quadrature information (specified using e.g. `gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYZ` in the kernel metadata - see Section [gh\\_shape and gh\\_evaluator\\_targets](#)). This information must be passed to the kernel from the Algorithm layer in the form of a *quadrature\_type* object. This must be the last argument passed to the kernel, e.g.:

```

type( quadrature_type )    :: qr
...
qr = quadrature_type(element_order+2, GAUSSIAN)
call invoke(pressure_gradient_kernel_type(rhs_tmp(igh_u), rho, theta, qr), &
    kinetic_energy_gradient_kernel_type(rhs_tmp(igh_u), u, chi, qr), &
    geopotential_gradient_kernel_type(rhs_tmp(igh_u), geopotential, qr))

```

This quadrature object specifies the set of points at which the basis/differential-basis functions required by the kernel are to be evaluated.

### 10.1.8 Stencils

Kernel metadata may specify that a Kernel performs a stencil operation on a field. Any such metadata must provide a stencil type. See the [meta\\_args](#) section for more details. The supported stencil types are X1D, Y1D, XORY1D or CROSS.

If a stencil operation is specified by the Kernel metadata the algorithm layer must provide the extent of the stencil (the maximum distance from the central cell that the stencil extends). The Dynamo0.3 API expects this information to be added as an additional integer argument immediately after the relevant field when specifying the Kernel via an invoke.

For example:

```

integer :: extent = 2
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, extent))

```

where `field2` has kernel metadata specifying that it has a stencil access.

`extent` may also be passed as a literal. For example:

```
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, 2))
```

where, again, `field2` has kernel metadata specifying that it has a stencil access.

---

**Note:** The stencil extent specified in the Algorithm layer is not the same as the stencil size passed in to the Kernel. The latter contains the number of cells in the stencil which is dependent on both the stencil type and extent.

---

If the Kernel metadata specifies that the stencil is of type XORY1D (which means X1D or Y1D) then the algorithm layer must specify whether the stencil is X1D or Y1D for that particular kernel call. The Dynamo0.3 API expects this information to be added as an additional argument immediately after the relevant stencil extent argument. The argument should be an `integer` with valid values being `x_direction` or `y_direction`, both being supplied by the LFRic infrastructure via the `flux_direction_mod` fortran module

For example:

```
use flux_direction_mod, only : x_direction
integer :: direction = x_direction
integer :: extent = 2
! ...
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, extent, direction))
```

`direction` may also be passed as a literal. For example:

```
use flux_direction_mod, only : x_direction
integer :: extent = 2
! ...
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, extent, x_direction))
```

If certain fields use the same value of extent and/or direction then the same variable, or literal value can be provided.

For example:

```
call invoke(kernel1(field1, field2, extent, field3, extent, direction), &
           kernel2(field1, field2, extent2, field4, extent, direction))
```

In the above example `field2` and `field3` in `kernel1` and `field4` in `kernel2` will have the same extent value but `field2` in `kernel2` may have a different value. Similarly, `field3` in `kernel1` and `field4` in `kernel2` will have the same direction value.

An example of the use of stencils is available in `examples/dynamo/eg5`.

There is currently no attempt to perform type checking in PSyclone so any errors in the type and/or position of arguments will not be picked up until compile time. However, PSyclone does check for the correct number of algorithm arguments. If the wrong number of arguments is provided then an exception is raised.

For example, running test 19.2 from the Dynamo0.3 API test suite gives:

```
cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests
psyclone test_files/dynamo0p3/19.2_single_stencil_broken.f90
"Generation Error: error: expected '5' arguments in the algorithm layer but found '4'.
Expected '4' standard arguments, '1' stencil arguments and '0' qr_arguments"
```

### 10.1.9 Inter-grid

From the Algorithm layer, an Invoke for inter-grid kernels (those that map fields between grids of different resolution) looks much like an Invoke containing general-purpose kernels. The only restrictions to be aware of are that inter-grid kernels accept only field or field-vectors as arguments and that an Invoke may not mix inter-grid kernels with any other kernel type. (Hence the second, separate Invoke in the example Algorithm code given at the beginning of this Section.)

## 10.2 PSy-layer

The general details of the PSy-layer are explained in the *PSy layer* section. This section describes any dynamo0p3 specific issues.

### 10.2.1 Module name

The PSy-layer code is contained within a Fortran module. The name of the module is determined from the algorithm-layer name with “\_psy” appended. The algorithm-layer name is the algorithm’s module name if it is a module, its subroutine name if it is a subroutine that is not within a module, or the program name if it is a program.

So, for example, if the algorithm code is contained within a module called “fred” then the PSy-layer module name will be “fred\_psy”.

## 10.3 Kernel

The general requirements for the structure of a Kernel are explained in the *Kernel layer* section. In the Dynamo API there are four different Kernel types; general purpose, CMA, inter-grid and *Built-ins*. In the case of built-ins, PSyclone generates the source of the kernels. This section explains the rules for the other three, user-supplied kernel types and then goes on to describe their metadata and subroutine arguments.

### 10.3.1 Rules for all User-Supplied Kernels

In the following, ‘operator’ refers to both LMA and CMA operator types.

- 1) A Kernel must have at least one argument that is a field, field vector, or operator. This rule reflects the fact that a Kernel iterates over a space and therefore must have some representation over that space.
- 2) The continuity of the iteration space of the Kernel is determined from the function space of the modified argument (see *Supported Function Spaces*). If more than one argument is modified then the iteration space is taken to be the largest required by any of those arguments. e.g. if a Kernel writes to two fields, the first on W3 (discontinuous) and the second on W1 (continuous), then the iteration space of that Kernel will be determined by the field on the continuous space.
- 3) If the function space of the modified argument(s) cannot be determined then they are assumed to be continuous. This is the case if any of the modified arguments are declared as `ANY_SPACE` and their actual space cannot be determined statically. This assumption is always safe but leads to additional computation if the quantities being updated are actually on discontinuous function spaces.
- 4) Operators do not have halo operations operating on them as they are either cell- (LMA) or column-based (CMA) and therefore act like discontinuous fields.
- 5) Any Kernel that writes to an operator will have its iteration space expanded such that valid values for the operator are computed in the level-1 halo.

- 6) Any Kernel that reads from an operator must not access halos beyond level 1. In this case PSyclone will check that the Kernel does not require values beyond the level-1 halo. If it does then PSyclone will abort.

### 10.3.2 Rules specific to General-Purpose Kernels without CMA Operators

- 1) General-purpose kernels accept arguments of any of the following types: field, field vector, LMA operator, scalar integer, scalar real.
- 2) A Kernel is permitted to write to more than one quantity (field or operator) and these quantities may be on the same or different function spaces.
- 3) A Kernel may not write to a scalar argument. (Only *Built-ins* are permitted to do this.) Any scalar arguments must therefore be declared in the metadata as `GH_READ` - see below.

### 10.3.3 Rules for Kernels that work with CMA Operators

The Dynamo 0.3 API has support for kernels that assemble, apply (or inverse-apply) column-wise/Column Matrix Assembly (CMA) operators. Such operators may also be used by matrix-matrix kernels. There are thus three types of CMA-related kernels. Since, by definition, CMA operators only act on data within a column, they have no horizontal dependencies. Therefore, kernels that write to them may be parallelised without colouring.

All three CMA-related kernel types must obey the following rules:

- 1) Since a CMA operator only acts within a single column of data, stencil operations are not permitted.
- 2) No vector quantities (e.g. “`GH_FIELD*3`” - see below) are permitted as arguments.

There are then additional rules specific to each of the three CMA kernel types. These are described below.

#### Assembly

CMA operators are themselves constructed from Local-Matrix-Assembly (LMA) operators. Therefore, any kernel which assembles a CMA operator must obey the following rules:

- 1) Have one or more LMA operators as read-only arguments.
- 2) Have exactly one CMA operator argument which must have write access.
- 3) Other types of argument (e.g. scalars or fields) are permitted but must be read-only.

#### Application and Inverse Application

Column-wise operators can only be applied to fields. CMA-Application kernels must therefore:

- 1) Have a single CMA operator as a read-only argument.
- 2) Have exactly two field arguments, one read-only and one that is written to.
- 3) The function spaces of the read and written fields must match the from and to spaces, respectively, of the supplied CMA operator.

#### Matrix-Matrix

A kernel that has just column-wise operators as arguments and zero or more read-only scalars is identified as performing a matrix-matrix operation. In this case:

- 1) Arguments must be CMA operators and, optionally, one or more scalars.



- 2) Exactly one of the CMA arguments must be written to while all other arguments must be read-only.

### 10.3.4 Rules for Inter-Grid Kernels

- 1) An inter-grid kernel is identified by the presence of a field or field-vector argument with the optional *mesh\_arg* metadata element (see *Inter-Grid Metadata*).
- 2) An invoke that contains one or more inter-grid kernels must not contain any other kernel types. (This restriction is an implementation decision and could be lifted in future if there is a need.)
- 3) An inter-grid kernel is only permitted to have field or field-vector arguments.
- 4) All inter-grid kernel arguments must have the *mesh\_arg* metadata entry.
- 5) An inter-grid kernel (and metadata) must have at least one field on each of the fine and coarse meshes. Specifying all fields as coarse or fine is forbidden.
- 6) Fields on different meshes must always live on different function spaces.
- 7) All fields on a given mesh must be on the same function space.

A consequence of Rules 5-7 is that an inter-grid kernel will only involve two function spaces.

### 10.3.5 Metadata

The code below outlines the elements of the Dynamo0.3 API kernel metadata, 1) ‘meta\_args’, 2) ‘meta\_funcs’, 3) ‘gh\_shape’, 4) ‘iterates\_over’ and 5) ‘procedure’.

```
type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: my_kernel_type
  type(arg_type) :: meta_args(...) = (/ ... /)
  type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(...) = (/ ... /)
  integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
  integer :: iterates_over = cells
contains
  procedure, nopass :: my_kernel_code
end type
```

These five metadata elements are discussed in order in the following sections.

#### meta\_args

The *meta\_args* array specifies information about data that the kernel code expects to be passed to it via its argument list. There is one entry in the *meta\_args* array for each **scalar**, **field**, or **operator** passed into the Kernel and the order that these occur in the *meta\_args* array must be the same as they are expected in the kernel code argument list. The entry must be of *arg\_type* which itself contains metadata about the associated argument. The size of the *meta\_args* array must correspond to the number of **scalars**, **fields** and **operators** passed into the Kernel.

---

**Note:** it makes no sense for a Kernel to have only **scalar** arguments (because the PSy layer will call a Kernel for each point in the spatial domain) and PSyclone will reject such Kernels.

---

For example, if there are a total of 2 **scalar** / **field** / **operator** entities being passed to the Kernel then the *meta\_args* array will be of size 2 and there will be two *arg\_type* entries:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(2) = (/                                &
    arg_type( ... ),                                              &
    arg_type( ... )                                              &
    /)                                                            &
```

Argument-metadata (metadata contained within the brackets of an `arg_type` entry), describes either a **scalar**, a **field** or an **operator** (either LMA or CMA).

The first argument-metadata entry describes whether the data that is being passed is for a real scalar (`GH_REAL`), an integer scalar (`GH_INTEGER`), a field (`GH_FIELD`) or an operator (either `GH_OPERATOR` for LMA or `GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR` for CMA). This information is mandatory.

Additionally, argument-metadata can be used to describe a vector of fields (see the [Field Vector](#) section for more details).

As an example, the following `meta_args` metadata describes 4 entries, the first is a real scalar, the next two are fields and the fourth is an operator. The third entry is a field vector of size 3.

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(4) = (/                                &
    arg_type(GH_REAL, ...),                                       &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, ...),                                       &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, ...),                                     &
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, ...)                                    &
    /)                                                            &
```

The second entry to argument-metadata (information contained within the brackets of an `arg_type`) describes how the Kernel makes use of the data being passed into it (the way it is accessed within a Kernel). This information is mandatory. There are currently 5 possible values of this metadata `GH_WRITE`, `GH_READ`, `GH_INC`, `GH_READWRITE` and `GH_SUM`. However, not all combinations of metadata entries are valid and PSyclone will raise an exception if an invalid combination is specified. Valid combinations are specified later in this section (see [Valid Access Modes](#)).

- `GH_WRITE` indicates the data is modified in the Kernel before (optionally) being read.
- `GH_READ` indicates that the data is read and is unmodified.
- `GH_INC` indicates that different iterations of a Kernel make contributions to shared values. For example, values at cell faces may receive contributions from cells on either side of the face. This means that such a Kernel needs appropriate synchronisation (or colouring) to run in parallel.
- `GH_READWRITE` indicates that different iterations of a Kernel update quantities which do not share dofs, such as operators and fields over discontinuous function spaces. If a Kernel modifies only discontinuous fields and/or operators there is no need for synchronisation or colouring when running such Kernels in parallel. However, modifying another field with a `GH_INC` access in a Kernel means that synchronisation or colouring is required for parallel runs.
- `GH_SUM` is an example of a reduction and is the only reduction currently supported in PSyclone. This metadata indicates that values are summed over calls to Kernel code.

For example:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(4) = (/                                &
    arg_type(GH_REAL, GH_SUM),                                     &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ...),                               &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_WRITE, ...),                           &
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ...)                           &
    /)                                                            &
```

**Note:** In the Dynamo 0.3 API only *Built-ins* are permitted to write to scalar arguments (and hence perform reductions). Furthermore, this permission is currently restricted to real scalars (`GH_REAL`) as the LFRic infrastructure does not yet

support integer reductions.

For a scalar the argument metadata contains only these two entries. However, fields and operators require further entries specifying function-space information. The meaning of these further entries differs depending on whether a field or an operator is being described.

In the case of an operator, the 3rd and 4th arguments describe the `to` and `from` function spaces respectively. In the case of a field the 3rd argument specifies the function space that the field lives on. More details about the supported function spaces are in subsection *Supported Function Spaces*.

For example, the metadata for a kernel that applies a Column-wise operator to a field might look like:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, W1),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, W2H),
    arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, W1, W2H) &
/)
```

In some cases a Kernel may be written so that it works for fields and/or operators from any type of `w2` space i.e. one of `w2`, `w2h` or `w2v`. In this case the metadata should be specified as being `any_w2`.

**Warning:** in the current implementation it is assumed that all fields and/or operators specifying `any_w2` within a kernel will use the **same** function space. It is up to the user to ensure this is the case as otherwise invalid code would be generated.

It may be that a Kernel is written such that a field and/or operators may be on/map-between any function space(s). In this case the metadata should be specified as being one of `any_space_1`, `any_space_2`, ..., `any_space_9`. The reason for having different names is that a Kernel might be written to allow 2 or more arguments to be able to support any function space but for a particular call the function spaces may have to be the same as each other.

In the example below, the first field entry supports any function space but it must be the same as the operator's `to` function space. Similarly, the second field entry supports any function space but it must be the same as the operator's `from` function space. Note, the metadata does not forbid `ANY_SPACE_1` and `ANY_SPACE_2` from being the same.

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ANY_SPACE_1),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_WRITE, ANY_SPACE_2),
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2) &
/)
```

Note also that the scope of this naming of any-space function spaces is restricted to the argument list of individual kernels. i.e. if an Invoke contains say, two kernel calls that each support arguments on any function space, e.g. `ANY_SPACE_1`, there is no requirement that these two function spaces be the same. Put another way, if an Invoke contained two calls of a kernel with arguments described by the above metadata then the first field argument passed to each kernel call need not be on the same space.

**Note:** A `GH_FIELD` argument that specifies `GH_WRITE` or `GH_READWRITE` as its access pattern must be a discontinuous function in the horizontal (see *Valid Access Modes* below). That means it must belong to `w3`, `wtheta` or `w2v` function spaces (see *Supported Function Spaces*). A `GH_FIELD` that specifies `GH_INC` as its access pattern may be continuous in the vertical (and discontinuous in the horizontal), continuous in the horizontal (and discontinuous in the vertical), or continuous in both. In each case the code is the same. However, if a field is discontinuous in the horizontal then it will not need colouring and, if is described as being on any space, there is currently no way to determine this from the metadata (unless we can statically determine the space of the field being passed in). At the moment this type

of Kernel is always treated as if it is continuous in the horizontal, even if it is not.

---

## Valid Access Modes

As mentioned earlier, not all combinations of metadata are valid. Valid combinations are summarised here. All types of data (`GH_INTEGER`, `GH_REAL`, `GH_FIELD`, `GH_OPERATOR` and `GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR`) may be read within a Kernel and this is specified in metadata using `GH_READ`. At least one kernel argument must be listed as being modified. When data is *modified* in a Kernel then the permitted access modes depend on the type of data it is and the function space it is on. Valid values are given in the table below.

Argument Type	Function space	Access type
<code>GH_INTEGER</code>	<i>n/a</i>	<code>GH_SUM</code> ( <i>Built-ins only</i> )
<code>GH_REAL</code>	<i>n/a</i>	<code>GH_SUM</code> ( <i>Built-ins only</i> )
<code>GH_FIELD</code>	Discontinuous	<code>GH_WRITE</code> , <code>GH_READWRITE</code>
<code>GH_FIELD</code>	Continuous	<code>GH_INC</code>
<code>GH_OPERATOR</code>	Any for both ‘to’ and ‘from’	<code>GH_WRITE</code> , <code>GH_READWRITE</code>
<code>GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR</code>	Any for both ‘to’ and ‘from’	<code>GH_WRITE</code> , <code>GH_READWRITE</code>

---

**Note:** As mentioned above, note that only Built-ins may modify scalar arguments. *Since the LFRic infrastructure does not currently support integer reductions, integer scalar arguments are restricted to having read-only access.*

---

There is no restriction on the number and function-spaces of other quantities that a general-purpose kernel can modify other than that it must modify at least one. The rules for kernels involving CMA operators, however, are stricter and only one argument may be modified (the CMA operator itself for assembly, a field for CMA-application and a CMA operator for matrix-matrix kernels). If a kernel writes to quantities on different function spaces then PSyclone generates loop bounds appropriate to the largest iteration space. This means that if a single kernel updates one quantity on a continuous function space and one on a discontinuous space then the resulting loop will include cells in the level 1 halo since they are required for a quantity on a continuous space. As a consequence, any quantities on a discontinuous space will then be computed redundantly in the level 1 halo. Currently PSyclone makes no attempt to take advantage of this (by e.g. setting the appropriate level-1 halo to ‘clean’).

PSyclone ensures that both CMA and LMA operators are computed (redundantly) out to the level-1 halo cells. This permits their use in kernels which modify quantities on continuous function spaces and also in subsequent redundant computation of other quantities on discontinuous function spaces. In conjunction with this, PSyclone also checks (when generating the PSy layer) that any kernels which read operator values do not do so beyond the level-1 halo. If any such accesses are found then PSyclone aborts.

## Supported Function Spaces

As mentioned in the [Field](#) and [Field Vector](#) sections, the function space of an argument specifies how it maps onto the underlying topology and, additionally, whether the data at a point is a vector.

Function spaces can share dofs between cells in the horizontal, vertical or both directions. Depending on the function space and FEM order, the shared dofs can lie on one or more cell entities (faces, edges and vertices) in each direction. This property is referred to as the **continuity** of a function space (horizontal, vertical or full). Alternatively, if there are no shared dofs a function space is described as **discontinuous** (fully or in a particular direction).

The mixed FEM formulation is built on a foundation set of four function spaces described below.

- `w0` is the space of scalar functions with full continuity. The shared dofs lie on cell vertices in the lowest order FEM and on all three entities in higher order FEM.

- `w1` is the space of vector functions with full continuity in the tangential direction only. In the lowest order FEM the shared dofs lie on cell edges for each component, whereas in higher order they also lie on cell faces.
- `w2` is the space of vector functions with full continuity in the normal direction only. The shared dofs lie on cell faces for each component.
- `w3` is the space of scalar functions with full discontinuity. All dofs lie within the cell volume and are not shared across the cell boundaries.

Additional function spaces required for representation of scalar or component-wise vector variables are:

- `wtheta` is the space of scalar functions based on the vertical part of `w2`, discontinuous in the horizontal and continuous in the vertical;
- `w2v` is the space of vector functions based on the vertical part of `w2`, discontinuous in the horizontal and continuous in the vertical;
- `w2h` is the space of vector functions based on the horizontal part of `w2`, continuous in the horizontal and discontinuous in the vertical.

Since the Dynamo0.3 API operates on columns of data, function spaces are categorised as continuous or discontinuous with regard to their horizontal continuity.

- **Continuous** function spaces are `w0`, `w1`, `w2` and `w2h`;
- **Discontinuous** function spaces are `w3`, `wtheta` and `w2v`.

Two additional function space metadata descriptors as mentioned in sections above are:

- `ANY_W2` for any type of `w2` function spaces;
- `ANY_SPACE` for when the function space of the modified argument(s) cannot be determined and/or for when a Kernel has been written so that it works with fields on any of the available spaces.

As mentioned previously, both `ANY_W2` and `ANY_SPACE` function space types are treated as continuous.

Horizontally discontinuous function spaces and fields over them will not need colouring so PSyclone does not perform it. If such attempt is made, PSyclone will raise a `Generation Error` in the **Dynamo0p3ColourTrans** transformation (see [Transformations](#) for more details on transformations). An example of fields iterating over a discontinuous function space `wtheta` is given in `examples/dynamo/eg9`, with the `GH_READWRITE` access descriptor denoting an update to the relevant fields. This example also demonstrates how to only colour loops over continuous function spaces when transformations are applied.

## Optional Field Metadata

A field entry in the `meta_args` array may have an optional fourth element. This element describes either a stencil access or, for inter-grid kernels, which mesh the field is on. Since an inter-grid kernel is not permitted to have stencil accesses, these two options are mutually exclusive. The metadata for each case is described in the following sections.

## Stencil Metadata

Stencil metadata specifies that the corresponding field argument is accessed as a stencil operation within the Kernel. Stencil metadata only makes sense if the associated field is read within a Kernel i.e. it only makes sense to specify stencil metadata if the first entry is `GH_FIELD` and the second entry is `GH_READ`.

Stencil metadata is written in the following format:

```
STENCIL (type)
```

where `type` may be one of `X1D`, `Y1D`, `XORY1D` or `CROSS`. As the stencil `extent` (the maximum distance from the central cell that the stencil extends) is not provided in the metadata, it is expected to be provided by the algorithm writer as part of the `invoke` call (see Section [Stencils](#)). As there is currently no way to specify a fixed extent value for stencils in the Kernel metadata, Kernels must therefore be written to support different values of extent (i.e. stencils with a variable number of cells).

The `XORY1D` stencil type indicates that the Kernel can accept either `X1D` or `Y1D` stencils. In this case it is up to the algorithm developer to specify which of these it is from the algorithm layer as part of the `invoke` call (see Section [Stencils](#)).

For example, the following stencil (with `extent=2`):

```
| 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
```

would be declared as

```
STENCIL(X1D)
```

and the following stencil (with `extent=2`)

```
|   |   | 9 |   |   |
|   |   | 5 |   |   |
| 6 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 7 |
|   |   | 4 |   |   |
|   |   | 8 |   |   |
```

would be declared as

```
STENCIL(CROSS)
```

Below is an example of stencil information within the full kernel metadata.

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/                                &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, W1),                                &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, W2H, STENCIL(CROSS)),              &
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, W1, W2H)                        &
    /)
```

There is a full example of this distributed with PSyclone. It may be found in `examples/dynamo/eg5`.

## Inter-Grid Metadata

The alternative form of the optional fourth metadata argument for a field specifies which mesh the associated field is on. This is required for inter-grid kernels which perform prolongation or restriction operations on fields (or field vectors) existing on grids of different resolutions.

Mesh metadata is written in the following format:

```
mesh_arg=type
```

where `type` may be one of `GH_COARSE` or `GH_FINE`. Any kernel having a field argument with this metadata is assumed to be an inter-grid kernel and, as such, all of its other arguments (which must also be fields) must have it specified too. An example of the metadata for such a kernel is given below:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(2) = (/                                &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ANY_SPACE_1, mesh_arg=GH_COARSE), &
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_2, mesh_arg=GH_FINE ) &
/)
```

Note that an inter-grid kernel must have at least one field (or field- vector) argument on each mesh type. Fields that are on different meshes cannot be on the same function space while those on the same mesh must also be on the same function space.

## Column-wise Operators (CMA)

In this section we provide example metadata for each of the three recognised kernel types involving CMA operators.

Column-wise operators are constructed from cell-wise (local) operators. Therefore, in order to **assemble** a CMA operator, a kernel must have at least one read-only LMA operator, e.g.:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(2) = (/
arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_WRITE, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2) &
/)
```

CMA operators (and their inverse) are **applied** to fields. Therefore any kernel of this type must have one read-only CMA operator, one read-only field and a field that is updated, e.g.:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ANY_SPACE_1), &
arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_2), &
arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2) &
/)
```

**Matrix-matrix** kernels compute the product/linear combination of CMA operators. They must therefore have one such operator that is updated while the rest are read-only. They may also have read-only scalar arguments, e.g.:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_WRITE, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
arg_type(GH_REAL, GH_READ) /)
```

**Note:** The order with which arguments are specified in metadata for CMA kernels does not affect the process of identifying the type of kernel (whether it is assembly, matrix-matrix etc.)

## meta\_funcs

The (optional) second component of kernel metadata specifies whether any quadrature or evaluator data is required for a given function space. (If no quadrature or evaluator data is required then this metadata should be omitted.) Consider the following kernel metadata:

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: testkern_operator_type
type(arg_type), dimension(3) :: meta_args = &
(/ arg_type(gh_operator, gh_write, w0, w0), &
arg_type(gh_field*3, gh_read, w1), &
arg_type(gh_integer, gh_read) &
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    /)
    type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(2) =           &
    (/ func_type(w0, gh_basis, gh_diff_basis) &
       func_type(w1, gh_basis)                  &
    /)
    integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
    integer :: iterates_over = cells
contains
    procedure, nopass :: code => testkern_operator_code
end type testkern_operator_type

```

The `arg_type` component of this metadata describes a kernel that takes three arguments (an operator, a field and an integer scalar). Following the `meta_args` array we now have a `meta_funcs` array. This allows the user to specify that the kernel requires basis functions (`gh_basis`) and/or the differential of the basis functions (`gh_diff_basis`) on one or more of the function spaces associated with the arguments listed in `meta_args`. In this case we require both for the W0 function space but only basis functions for W1.

### gh\_shape and gh\_evaluator\_targets

If a kernel requires basis or differential-basis functions then the metadata must also specify the set of points on which these functions are required. This information is provided by the `gh_shape` component of the metadata. Currently PSyclone supports two shapes; `gh_quadrature_XYoZ` for Gaussian quadrature points and `gh_evaluator` for evaluation (of the basis/differential-basis functions) at nodal points. For the latter, there are two options: if an evaluator is required for multiple function spaces then these can be specified using the additional `gh_evaluator_targets` metadata entry. This entry is a one-dimensional, integer array containing the desired function spaces. For example, to request basis/differential-basis functions evaluated on both W0 and W1 the metadata would be:

```

integer :: gh_shape = gh_evaluator
integer :: gh_evaluator_targets(2) = (/W0, W1/)

```

The kernel must have an argument (field or operator) on each of the function spaces listed in `gh_evaluator_targets`. The default behaviour if `gh_evaluator_targets` is not specified is to provide evaluators for each function space associated with the quantities that the kernel is updating. All necessary data is extracted in the PSy layer and passed to the kernel(s) as required - nothing is required from the Algorithm layer. If a kernel requires quadrature on the other hand, the Algorithm writer must supply a `quadrature_type` object as the last argument to the kernel (see Section [Quadrature](#)).

Note that it is an error for kernel metadata to specify a value for `gh_shape` if no basis or differential-basis functions are required. It is also an error to specify `gh_evaluator_targets` if the kernel does not require an evaluator (i.e. `gh_shape != gh_evaluator`).

### iterates over

The fourth type of metadata provided is `ITERATES_OVER`. This specifies that the Kernel has been written with the assumption that it is iterating over the specified entity. For user-supplied kernels this currently only has one valid value which is `CELLS`.

### Procedure

The fifth and final type of metadata is `procedure` metadata. This specifies the name of the Kernel subroutine that this metadata describes.

For example:



```
procedure, nopass :: my_kernel_subroutine
```

### 10.3.6 Subroutine

#### Rules for General-Purpose Kernels

The arguments to general-purpose kernels (those that do not involve either CMA operators or prolongation/restriction operations) follow a set of rules which have been specified for the Dynamo0.3 API. These rules are encoded in the `generate()` method within the `ArgOrdering` abstract class in the `dynamo0p3.py` file. The rules, along with PSyclone's naming conventions, are:

- 1) If an LMA operator is passed then include the `cells` argument. `cells` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 2) Include `nlayers`, the number of layers in a column. `nlayers` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 3) For each scalar/field/vector\_field/operator in the order specified by the `meta_args` metadata:
  - 1) if the current entry is a scalar quantity then include the Fortran variable in the argument list. The intent is determined from the metadata (see [meta\\_args](#) for an explanation).
  - 2) if the current entry is a field then include the field array. The field array name is currently specified as being `"field_"<argument_position>"_ "<field_function_space>`. A field array is a real array of type `r_def` and dimensioned as the unique degrees of freedom for the space that the field is on. This value is passed in separately. Again, the intent is determined from the metadata (see [meta\\_args](#)).
    - 1) If the field entry has a stencil access then add an integer stencil-size argument with intent `in`. This will supply the number of cells in the stencil.
    - 2) If the field entry stencil access is of type `XORY1D` then add an integer direction argument with intent `in`.
  - 3) if the current entry is a field vector then for each dimension of the vector, include a field array. The field array name is specified as being using `"field_"<argument_position>"_ "<field_function_space>"_v"<vector_position>`. A field array in a field vector is declared in the same way as a field array (described in the previous step).
  - 4) if the current entry is an operator then first include a dimension size. This is an integer. The name of this size is `<operator_name>"_ncell_3d"`. Next include the operator. This is a real array of type `r_def` and is 3 dimensional. The first two dimensions are the local degrees of freedom for the `to` and `from` function spaces respectively. The third dimension is the dimension size mentioned before. The name of the operator is `"op_ "<argument_position>`. Again the intent is determined from the metadata (see [meta\\_args](#)).
- 4) For each function space in the order they appear in the metadata arguments (the `to` function space of an operator is considered to be before the `from` function space of the same operator as it appears first in lexicographic order)
  - 1) Include the number of local degrees of freedom (i.e. number per-cell) for the function space. This is an integer and has intent `in`. The name of this argument is `"ndf_ "<field_function_space>`.
  - 2) If there is a field on this space
    - 1) Include the unique number of degrees of freedom for the function space. This is an integer and has intent `in`. The name of this argument is `"undf_ "<field_function_space>`.
    - 2) Include the dofmap for this function space. This is an integer array with intent `in`. It has one dimension sized by the local degrees of freedom for the function space.
  - 3) For each operation on the function space (`basis`, `diff_basis`, `orientation`) in the order specified in the metadata

- 1) if it is a basis or differential basis function then we must pass real arrays of kind `r_def` with intent `in`:

- 1) if `gh_shape` is `gh_quadrature_xyoz` then the arrays are of rank 4 with extent (dimension, number\_of\_dofs, `np_xy`, `np_z`). The name of the argument is `"basis_"<field_function_space>` or `"diff_basis_"<field_function_space>`, as appropriate.
- 2) if `gh_shape` is `gh_evaluator` then we pass one array for each target function space (e.g. as specified by `gh_evaluator_targets`). Each of these arrays are of rank 3 with extent (dimension, number\_of\_dofs, `ndf_<target_function_space>`). The name of the argument is `"basis_"<field_function_space>"_on_<target_function_space>` or `"diff_basis_"<field_function_space>"_on_<target_function_space>`, as appropriate.

where dimension is 1 or 3 and depends upon the function space and whether or not it is a basis or a differential basis function. For the former it is (`w0=1`, `w1=3`, `w2=3`, `w3=1`, `wtheta=1`, `w2h=3`, `w2v=3`, `any_w2=3`). For the latter it is (`w0=3`, `w1=3`, `w2=1`, `w3=3`, `wtheta=3`, `w2h=1`, `w2v=1`, `any_w2=3`). `number_of_dofs` is the number of degrees of freedom (dofs) associated with the function space and `np_*` are the number of points to be evaluated: i) `*_xyz` in all directions (3D); ii) `*_xy` in the horizontal plane (2D); iii) `*_x`, `*_y` in the horizontal (1D); and iv) `*_z` in the vertical (1D).

- 2) If it is an orientation array, include the associated argument. The argument is an integer array with intent `in`. There is one dimension of size the local degrees of freedom for the function space. The name of the array is `"orientation_"<field_function_space>`.

- 5) If Quadrature is required (`gh_shape = gh_quadrature_*`)

- 1) include integer, scalar arguments with intent `in` that specify the extent of the basis/diff-basis arrays:
  - 1) if `gh_shape` is `gh_quadrature_XYoZ` then pass `np_xy` and `np_z`.
- 2) include weights which are real arrays of kind `r_def`:
  - 1) If `gh_quadrature_XYoZ` pass in `w_XZ` (`np_xy`) and `w_Z` (`np_z`)

## Examples

For instance, if a kernel has only one written argument and requires an evaluator then its metadata might be:

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: testkern_operator_type
  type(arg_type), dimension(2) :: meta_args =      &
    (/ arg_type(gh_operator, gh_write, w0, w1), &
      arg_type(gh_field*3, gh_read, w0) /)
  type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(1) =              &
    (/ func_type(w0, gh_basis) /)
  integer :: iterates_over = cells
  integer :: gh_shape = gh_evaluator
contains
  procedure, nopass :: code => testkern_operator_code
end type testkern_operator_type
```

then we only pass the basis functions evaluated on `W0` (the space of the written kernel argument). The subroutine arguments will therefore be:

```
subroutine testkern_operator_code(cell, nlayers, ncell_3d,      &
  local_stencil, xdata, ydata, zdata, ndf_w0, undf_w0, map_w0, &
  basis_w0_on_w0, ndf_w1)
```

where `local_stencil` is the operator, `xdata`, `ydata` etc. are the three components of the field vector and `map_w0` is the dof map for the W0 function space.

If instead, `gh_evaluator_targets` is specified in the metadata:

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: testkern_operator_type
  type(arg_type), dimension(2) :: meta_args =      &
    (/ arg_type(gh_operator, gh_write, w0, w1), &
      arg_type(gh_field*3, gh_read, w0) /)
  type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(1) =              &
    (/ func_type(w0, gh_basis) /)
  integer :: iterates_over = cells
  integer :: gh_shape = gh_evaluator
  integer :: gh_evaluator_targets(2) = (/W0, W1/)
contains
  procedure, nopass :: code => testkern_operator_code
end type testkern_operator_type
```

then we will need to pass two sets of basis functions (evaluated at W0 and at W1):

```
subroutine testkern_operator_code(cell, nlayers, ncell_3d,      &
  local_stencil, xdata, ydata, zdata, ndf_w0, undf_w0, map_w0, &
  basis_w0_on_w0, basis_w0_on_w1, ndf_w1)
```

## Rules for CMA Kernels

Kernels involving CMA operators are restricted to just three types; assembly, application/inverse-application and matrix-matrix. We give the rules for each of these in the sections below.

### Assembly

An assembly kernel requires the column-banded dofmap for both the to- and from-function spaces of the CMA operator being assembled as well as the number of dofs for each of the dofmaps. The full set of rules is:

- 1) Include the `cell` argument. `cell` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 2) Include `nlayers`, the number of layers in a column. `nlayers` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 3) Include the number of cells in the 2D mesh, `ncell_2d`, which is an integer with intent `in`.
- 4) Include the total number of cells, `ncell_3d`, which is an integer with intent `in`.
- 5) For each argument in the `meta_args` metadata array:
  - 1) If it is a LMA operator, include a real, 3-dimensional array of type `r_def`. The first two dimensions are the local degrees of freedom for the `to` and `from` spaces, respectively. The third dimension is `ncell_3d`.
  - 2) If it is a CMA operator, include a real, 3-dimensional array of type `r_def`. The first dimension is `"bandwidth_"<operator_name>`, the second is `"nrow_"<operator_name>`, and the third is `ncell_2d`.
    - 1) Include the number of rows in the banded matrix. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"nrow_"<operator_name>`.
    - 2) If the from-space of the operator is *not* the same as the to-space then include the number of columns in the banded matrix. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"ncol_"<operator_name>`.
    - 3) Include the bandwidth of the banded matrix. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"bandwidth_"<operator_name>`.

- 4) Include banded-matrix parameter `alpha`. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"alpha_"<operator_name>`.
- 5) Include banded-matrix parameter `beta`. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"beta_"<operator_name>`.
- 6) Include banded-matrix parameter `gamma_m`. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"gamma_m_"<operator_name>`.
- 7) Include banded-matrix parameter `gamma_p`. This is an integer with intent `in` and is named as `"gamma_p_"<operator_name>`.
- 3) If it is a field or scalar argument then include arguments following the same rules as for general-purpose kernels.
- 6) For each unique function space in the order they appear in the metadata arguments (the `to` function space of an operator is considered to be before the `from` function space of the same operator as it appears first in lexicographic order):
  - 1) Include the number of degrees of freedom per cell for the space. This is an integer with intent `in`. The name of this argument is `"ndf_"<arg_function_space>`.
  - 2) If there is a field on this space then:
    - 1) Include the unique number of degrees of freedom for the function space. This is an integer and has intent `in`. The name of this argument is `"undf_"<field_function_space>`.
    - 2) Include the dofmap for this space. This is an integer array with intent `in`. It has one dimension sized by the local degrees of freedom for the function space.
  - 3) If the CMA operator has this space as its `to/from` space then include the column-banded dofmap, the list of offsets for the `to/from`-space. This is an integer array of rank 2. The first dimension is `"ndf_"<arg_function_space>` `` and the second is `nlayers`.

## Application/Inverse-Application

A kernel applying a CMA operator requires the column-indirection dofmap for both the `to`- and `from`-function spaces of the CMA operator. Since it does not have any LMA operator arguments it does not require the `ncell_3d` and `nlayers` scalar arguments. (Since a column-wise operator is, by definition, assembled for a whole column, there is no loop over levels when applying it.) The full set of rules is then:

- 1) Include the `cell` argument. `cell` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 2) Include the number of cells in the 2D mesh, `ncell_2d`, which is an integer with intent `in`.
- 3) For each argument in the `meta_args` metadata array:
  - 1) If it is a field, include the field array. This is a real array of kind `r_def` and is of rank 1. The field array name is currently specified as being `"field_"<argument_position>_"<field_function_space>`. The extent of the array is the number of unique degrees of freedom for the function space that the field is on. This value is passed in separately. The intent of the argument is determined from the metadata (see [meta\\_args](#)).
  - 2) If it is a CMA operator, include it and its associated parameters (see Rule 5 of CMA Assembly kernels).
- 4) For each of the unique function spaces encountered in the metadata arguments (the `to` function space of an operator is considered to be before the `from` function space of the same operator as it appears first in lexicographic order):
  - 1) Include the number of degrees of freedom per cell for the associated function space. This is an integer with intent `in`. The name of this argument is `"ndf_"<field_function_space>`.

- 2) Include the number of unique degrees of freedom for the associated function space. This is an integer with intent `in`. The name of this argument is `"undf_"<field_function_space>`.
- 3) Include the dofmap for this function space. This is a rank-1 integer array with extent equal to the number of degrees of freedom of the space (`"ndf_"<field_function_space>`).
- 5) Include the indirection map for the to-space of the CMA operator. This is a rank-1 integer array with extent `nrow`.
- 6) If the from-space of the operator is *not* the same as the to-space then include the indirection map for the from-space of the CMA operator. This is a rank-1 integer array with extent `ncol`.

## Matrix-Matrix

Does not require any dofmaps and also does not require the `nlayers` and `ncell_3d` scalar arguments. The full set of rules are then:

- 1) Include the `cell` argument. `cell` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 2) Include the number of cells in the 2D mesh, `ncell_2d`, which is an integer with intent `in`.
- 3) For each CMA operator or scalar argument specified in metadata:
  - 1) If it is a CMA operator, include it and its associated parameters (see Rule 5 of CMA Assembly kernels).
  - 2) If it is a scalar argument include the corresponding Fortran variable in the argument list with intent `in`.

## Rules for Inter-Grid Kernels

As already specified, inter-grid kernels are only permitted to take fields and/or field-vectors as arguments. Fields (and field-vectors) that are on different meshes must be on different function spaces. Fields on the same mesh must also be on the same function space.

Argument ordering follows the general pattern used for ‘normal’ kernels with field data being followed by dofmap data. The rules for arguments to inter-grid kernels are as follows:

- 1) Include `nlayers`, the number of layers in a column. `nlayers` is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 2) Include the `cell_map` for the current cell (column). This is an integer array of rank one and intent `in` which provides the mapping from the coarse to the fine mesh. It has extent `ncell_f_per_c`.
- 3) Include `ncell_f_per_c`, the number of fine cells per coarse cell. This is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 4) Include `ncell_f`, the number of cells (columns) in the fine mesh. This is an integer and has intent `in`.
- 5) For each argument in the `meta_args` metadata array (which must be a field or field-vector):
  - 1) Pass in field data as done for a regular kernel.
- 6) For each unique function space (of which there will currently be two) in the order in which they are encountered in the `meta_args` metadata array, include dofmap information:

If the dofmap is associated with an argument on the fine mesh:

- 1) Include `ndf_fine`, the number of DoFs per cell for the FS of the field on the fine mesh.
- 2) Include `undf_fine`, the number of unique DoFs per cell for the FS of the field on the fine mesh.
- 3) Include `dofmap_fine`, the *whole* dofmap for the fine mesh. This is an integer array of rank two with intent `in`. The extent of the first dimension is `ndf_fine` and that of the second is `ncell_f`.

else, the dofmap is associated with an argument on the coarse mesh:

- 1) Include `undf_coarse`, the number of unique DoFs for the coarse field. This is an integer with intent `in`.
- 2) Include `dofmap_coarse`, the dofmap for the current cell (column) in the coarse mesh. This is an integer array of rank one and has intent `in`.

## 10.4 Built-ins

The basic concept of a PSyclone Built-in is described in the [Built-ins](#) section. In the Dynamo 0.3 API, calls to Built-ins generally follow a convention that the field/scalar written to comes first in the argument list. Dynamo 0.3 Built-ins must conform to the following four rules:

- 1) Built-in kernels must have one and only one modified (i.e. written to) argument.
- 2) There must be at least one field in the argument list. This is so that we know the number of dofs to iterate over.
- 3) Kernel arguments must be either fields or scalars.
- 4) All field arguments to a given Built-in must be on the same function space. This is because all current Built-ins iterate over dofs and therefore all fields should have the same number. It also means that we can determine the number of dofs uniquely when a scalar is written to.

The Built-ins supported for the Dynamo 0.3 API are listed in the related subsections, grouped by the mathematical operation they perform. For clarity, the calculation performed by each Built-in is described using Fortran array syntax; this does not necessarily reflect the actual implementation of the Built-in (*e.g.* it could be implemented by PSyclone generating a call to an optimised maths library).

### 10.4.1 Naming scheme

The supported Built-ins in the Dynamo 0.3 API are named according to the scheme presented below. Any new Built-in needs to comply with these rules.

- 1) Ordering of arguments in Built-ins calls follows *LHS (result) <- RHS (operation on arguments)* direction, except where a Built-in returns the *LHS* result to one of the *RHS* arguments. In that case ordering of arguments remains as in the *RHS* expression, with the returning *RHS* argument written as close to the *LHS* as it can be without affecting the mathematical expression.
- 2) Field names begin with upper case in short form (e.g. **X**, **Y**, **Z**) and any case in long form (e.g. **Field1**, **field**).
- 3) Scalar names begin with lower case: e.g. **a**, **b**, are **scalar1**, **scalar2**. Special names for scalars are: **constant** (or **c**), **innprod** (inner/scalar product of two fields) and **sumfld** (sum of a field).
- 4) Arguments in Built-ins variable declarations and constructs (PSyclone Fortran and Python definitions):
  - a) Are always written in long form and lower case (e.g. **field1**, **field2**, **scalar1**, **scalar2**);
  - b) *LHS* result arguments are always listed first;
  - c) *RHS* arguments are listed in order of appearance in the mathematical expression, except when one of them is the *LHS* result.
- 5) Built-ins names in Fortran consist of:
  - 1) *RHS* arguments in short form (e.g. **X**, **Y**, **a**, **b**) only;
  - 2) Descriptive name of mathematical operation on *RHS* arguments in the form `<operationname>_<RHSarg>` for one *RHS* argument or `<RHSargs>_<operationname>_<RHSargs>` for more;

3) Prefix `"inc_"` where the result is returned to one of the *RHS* arguments (i.e. `"inc_"<RHSargs>_<operationname>_<RHSargs>`).

6) Built-ins names in Python definitions are similar to their Fortran counterparts, with a few differences:

- 1) Operators and *RHS* arguments are all in upper case (e.g. **X**, **Y**, **A**, **B**, **Plus**, **Minus**);
- 2) There are no underscores;
- 3) Common prefix is `"Dyn"`, common suffix is `"Kern"`.

### 10.4.2 Addition

Built-ins which add (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword **plus**.

#### **X\_plus\_Y**

**X\_plus\_Y** (*field3*, *field1*, *field2*)

Sums two fields ( $Z = X + Y$ ):

```
field3(:) = field1(:) + field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

#### **inc\_X\_plus\_Y**

**inc\_X\_plus\_Y** (*field1*, *field2*)

Adds the second field to the first and returns it ( $X = X + Y$ ):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) + field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

#### **aX\_plus\_Y**

**aX\_plus\_Y** (*field3*, *scalar*, *field1*, *field2*)

Performs  $Z = aX + Y$ :

```
field3(:) = scalar*field1(:) + field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2`

## inc\_aX\_plus\_Y

**inc\_aX\_plus\_Y** (*scalar*, *field1*, *field2*)

Performs  $X = aX + Y$  (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = scalar*field1(:) + field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

## inc\_X\_plus\_bY

**inc\_X\_plus\_bY** (*field1*, *scalar*, *field2*)

Performs  $X = X + bY$  (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) + scalar*field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

## aX\_plus\_bY

**aX\_plus\_bY** (*field3*, *scalar1*, *field1*, *scalar2*, *field2*)

Performs  $Z = aX + bY$ :

```
field3(:) = scalar1*field1(:) + scalar2*field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar1, scalar2`
- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2`

## inc\_aX\_plus\_bY

**inc\_aX\_plus\_bY** (*scalar1*, *field1*, *scalar2*, *field2*)

Performs  $X = aX + bY$  (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = scalar1*field1(:) + scalar2*field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar1, scalar2`



- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

### 10.4.3 Subtraction

Built-ins which subtract (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword **minus**.

#### **X\_minus\_Y**

**X\_minus\_Y** (*field3, field1, field2*)

Subtracts the second field from the first and stores the result in the third ( $Z = X - Y$ ):

```
field3(:) = field1(:) - field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

#### **inc\_X\_minus\_Y**

**inc\_X\_minus\_Y** (*field1, field2*)

Subtracts the second field from the first and returns it ( $X = X - Y$ ):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) - field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

#### **aX\_minus\_Y**

**aX\_minus\_Y** (*field3, scalar, field1, field2*)

Performs  $Z = aX - Y$ :

```
field3(:) = scalar*field1(:) - field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2`

## X\_minus\_bY

**X\_minus\_bY** (*field3, field1, scalar, field2*)

Performs  $Z = X - bY$ :

```
field3(:) = field1(:) - scalar*field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2`

## inc\_X\_minus\_bY

**inc\_X\_minus\_bY** (*field1, scalar, field2*)

Performs  $X = X - bY$  (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) - scalar*field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

## 10.4.4 Multiplication

Built-ins which multiply (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword **times**.

## X\_times\_Y

**X\_times\_Y** (*field3, field1, field2*)

Multiplies two fields together and returns the result in a third field ( $Z = X*Y$ ):

```
field3(:) = field1(:)*field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2`

## inc\_X\_times\_Y

**inc\_X\_times\_Y** (*field1, field2*)

Multiplies the first field by the second and returns it ( $X = X*Y$ ):

```
field1(:) = field1(:)*field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

### **inc\_aX\_times\_Y**

**inc\_aX\_times\_Y** (*scalar, field1, field2*)

Performs  $X = a * X * Y$  (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = scalar*field1(:)*field2(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

## 10.4.5 Scaling

Built-ins which scale fields are technically cases of multiplying a field by a scalar and are hence also denoted with the keyword **times**.

### **a\_times\_X**

**a\_times\_X** (*field2, scalar, field1*)

Multiplies a field by a scalar and stores the result in a second field ( $Y = a * X$ ):

```
field2(:) = scalar*field1(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field2`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1`

### **inc\_a\_times\_X**

**inc\_a\_times\_X** (*scalar, field*)

Multiplies a field by a scalar value and returns the field ( $X = a * X$ ):

```
field(:) = scalar*field(:)
```

where:

- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: scalar`
- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field`

### 10.4.6 Division

Built-ins which divide (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword **divideby**.

#### **X\_divideby\_Y**

**X\_divideby\_Y** (*field3, field1, field2*)

Divides the first field by the second and returns the result in the third ( $Z = X/Y$ ):

```
field3(:) = field1(:)/field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field3`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2`

#### **inc\_X\_divideby\_Y**

**inc\_X\_divideby\_Y** (*field1, field2*)

Divides the first field by the second and returns it ( $X = X/Y$ ):

```
field1(:) = field1(:)/field2(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field1`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field2`

### 10.4.7 Setting to value

Built-ins which set field elements to some value and hence are denoted with the keyword **setval**.

#### **setval\_c**

**setval\_c** (*field, constant*)

Sets all elements of the field *field* to the value *constant* ( $X = c$ ):

```
field(:) = constant
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field`
- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: constant`

---

**Note:** The field may be on any function space.

---

## setval\_X

**setval\_X** (*field2*, *field1*)

Sets a field *field2* equal to field *field1* ( $Y = X$ ):

```
field2(:) = field1(:)
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(out) :: field2`
- `type(field_type), intent(in) :: field1`

## 10.4.8 Raising to power

Built-ins which raise field elements to an exponent are denoted with the keyword **powreal** for real exponent or **powint** for integer exponent.

### inc\_X\_powreal\_a

**inc\_X\_powreal\_a** (*field*, *rscalar*)

Raises a field to a real scalar value and returns the field ( $X = X^{**a}$ ):

```
field(:) = field(:)**rscalar
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field`
- `real(r_def), intent(in) :: rscalar`

### inc\_X\_powint\_n

**inc\_X\_powint\_n** (*field*, *iscalar*)

Raises a field to an integer scalar value and returns the field ( $X = X^{**n}$ ):

```
field(:) = field(:)**iscalar
```

where:

- `type(field_type), intent(inout) :: field`
- `integer(i_def), intent(in) :: iscalar`

## 10.4.9 Inner product

Built-ins which calculate the inner product of two fields or of a field with itself are denoted with the keyword **inner-product**.

## X\_innerproduct\_Y

**X\_innerproduct\_Y** (*innprod*, *field1*, *field2*)

Computes the inner product of the fields *field1* and *field2*, *i.e.*:

```
innprod = SUM(field1(:)*field2(:))
```

where:

- real(*r\_def*), intent(out) :: *innprod*
- type(*field\_type*), intent(in) :: *field1*, *field2*

---

**Note:** When used with distributed memory this Built-in will trigger the addition of a global sum which may affect the performance and/or scalability of the code.

---

## X\_innerproduct\_X

**X\_innerproduct\_X** (*innprod*, *field*)

Computes the inner product of the field *field1* by itself, *i.e.*:

```
innprod = SUM(field(:)*field(:))
```

where:

- real(*r\_def*), intent(out) :: *innprod*
- type(*field\_type*), intent(in) :: *field*

---

**Note:** When used with distributed memory this Built-in will trigger the addition of a global sum which may affect the performance and/or scalability of the code.

---

## 10.4.10 Sum of elements

Built-in which sums the elements of a field is denoted with the keyword *sum*.

### sum\_X

**sum\_X** (*sumfld*, *field*)

Sums all of the elements of the field *field* and returns the result in the scalar variable *sumfld*:

```
sumfld = SUM(field(:))
```

where:

- real(*r\_def*), intent(out) :: *sumfld*
- type(*field\_type*), intent(in) :: *field*

---

**Note:** When used with distributed memory this Built-in will trigger the addition of a global sum which may affect the performance and/or scalability of the code.

---

## 10.5 Boundary Conditions

In the Dynamo0.3 API, boundary conditions for a field or LMA operator can be enforced by the algorithm developer by calling the Kernels `enforce_bc_type` or `enforce_operator_bc_type`, respectively. These kernels take a field or operator as input and apply boundary conditions. For example:

```
call invoke( kernel_type(field1, field2),      &
             enforce_bc_type(field1),         &
             kernel_with_op_type(field1, op1), &
             enforce_operator_bc_type(op1)     &
             )
```

The particular boundary conditions that are applied are not known by PSyclone, PSyclone simply recognises these kernels by their names and passes pre-specified dofmap and boundary\_value arrays into the kernel implementations, the contents of which are set by the LFRic infrastructure.

Up to and including version 1.4.0 of PSyclone, boundary conditions were applied automatically after a call to `matrix_vector_type` if the field arguments were on a vector function space (one of `w1`, `w2`, `w2h` or `w2v`). With the subsequent introduction of the ability to apply boundary conditions to operators this functionality is no longer required and has been removed.

Example `eg4` in the `examples/dynamo` directory includes a call to `enforce_bc_kernel_type` so can be used to see the boundary condition code that is added by PSyclone. See the `README` in the `examples/dynamo` directory for instructions on how to run this example.

An example of applying boundary conditions to an operator is the kernel `enforce_operator_bc_kernel_mod.F90` in the `<PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests/test_files/dynamo0p3` directory. Since operators are discontinuous quantities, updating their values can be safely performed in parallel (see Section [Kernel](#)). The `GH_READWRITE` access is used for updating discontinuous operators (see subsection [Valid Access Modes](#) for more details).

## 10.6 Conventions

The naming of Dynamo0.3 API kernels and associated entities (types, subroutines and modules) follows the PSyclone Fortran naming conventions (see [Fortran Naming Conventions](#)). However, PSyclone does not need this convention to be followed apart from the stub generator (see the [Stub Generation](#) Section ) where the name of the metadata to be parsed is determined from the module name.

The contents of the metadata is also usually declared private but this does not affect PSyclone.

Finally, the `procedure` metadata (located within the kernel metadata) usually has `nopass` specified but again this is ignored by PSyclone.

## 10.7 Configuration

### 10.7.1 Annexed DoFs

When a kernel iterates over dofs (rather than cells) for a continuous field using distributed memory (see the [Distributed Memory](#) Section), then PSyclone need only ensure that dofs owned by a processor are computed. However, for continuous fields, shared dofs at the boundary between processors must be replicated (as different cells share the same dof). Only one processor can own a dof, therefore processors will have continuous fields which contain dofs that the processor does not own. These unowned dofs are called *annexed* in the dynamo0.3 api and are a separate, but related, concept to field halos.

When a kernel that iterates over cells needs to read a continuous field then the annexed dofs must be up-to-date on all processors. If they are not then a halo exchange must be added. Currently PSyclone defaults, for kernels which iterate over dofs, to iterating over only owned dofs. This behaviour can be changed by setting `COMPUTE_ANNEXED_DOFS` to `true` in the `dynamo0.3` section of the configuration file (see the [Configuration](#) section). PSyclone will then generate code to iterate over both owned and annexed dofs, thereby reducing the number of halo exchanges required (at the expense of redundantly computing annexed dofs). For more details please refer to the [Dynamo0.3 developers](#) section.

## 10.8 Transformations

This section describes the dynamo-api-specific transformations. In all cases, excepting **Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans**, **Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans** and **Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans**, these transformations are specialisations of generic transformations described in the [Transformations](#) section. The difference between these transformations and the generic ones is that these perform dynamo-api-specific checks to make sure the transformations are valid. In practice these transformations perform the required checks then call the generic ones internally.

The use of the dynamo-api-specific transformations is exactly the same as the equivalent generic ones in all cases excepting **DynamoLoopFuseTrans**. In this case an additional optional argument `same_space` has been added to the `apply` method. The reason for this is to allow loop fusion when one or more of the iteration-spaces is determined by a function space that is unknown by PSyclone at compile time. This is the case when the `ANY_SPACE` function space is specified in the Kernel metadata. By default PSyclone will not allow loop fusion if it does not know the spaces are the same. The `same_space` option allows the user to specify that the spaces are the same. This option should therefore be used with caution. Note, if PSyclone knows the spaces are different this option has no effect and the transformation will always raise an exception.

The **Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans** and **Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchange** transformations are only valid for the “Dynamo0p3” API. This is because this API is currently the only one that supports distributed memory. An example of redundant computation can be found in `examples/dynamo/eg8` and an example of asynchronous halo exchanges can be found in `examples/dynamo/eg11`.

The **Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans** transformation is only valid for the “Dynamo0p3” API. This is because the properties that it makes constant are API specific.

The Dynamo-specific transformations currently available are given below. If the name of a transformation includes “Dynamo0p3” it means that the transformation is only valid for this particular API. If the name of the transformation includes “Dynamo” then it should work with all versions of the Dynamo API.

---

**Note:** Only the loop-colouring and OpenMP transformations are currently supported for loops that contain inter-grid kernels. Attempting to apply other transformation types will result in PSyclone raising an error.

---



**class** `psyclone.transformations.DynamoExtractRegionTrans`

Dynamo0.3 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> FILENAME = "solver_alg.x90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import DynamoExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply DynamoExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0:3])
>>> newsched.view()
```

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans`

Performs error checking before calling the `apply()` method of the *base class* in order to fuse two Dynamo loops.

**apply** (*node1*, *node2*, *same\_space=False*)

Fuse the two Dynamo loops represented by *node1* and *node2*. The optional *same\_space* flag asserts that an unknown iteration space (i.e. *any\_space*) matches the other iteration space. This is set at the users own risk.

**Parameters**

- **node1** (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop`) – First Loop to fuse.
- **node2** (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop`) – Second Loop to fuse.

**Returns** two-tuple of modified Schedule and Memento

**Return type** `psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if either of the supplied loops contains an inter-grid kernel.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

Dynamo-specific OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by the *base class*.

**apply** (*node*)

Perform Dynamo specific loop validity checks then call the `apply()` method of the *base class*.

**Parameters** **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the Node in the Schedule to check

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the associated loop requires colouring.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans`

Splits a synchronous halo exchange into a halo exchange start and halo exchange end. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

**apply** (*node*)

Transforms a synchronous halo exchange, represented by a `HaloExchange` node, into an asynchronous halo exchange, represented by `HaloExchangeStart` and `HaloExchangeEnd` nodes.

**Parameters** *node* (`psyclone.psygen.HaloExchange`) – A synchronous haloexchange node

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

**Return type** `str`

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTrans`

Split a Dynamo 0.3 loop over cells into colours so that it can be parallelised. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import transformations
>>> import os
>>> import pytest
>>>
>>> TEST_API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> _, info=parse(os.path.join(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__)),
>>>                             "tests", "test_files", "dynamo0p3",
>>>                             "4.6_multikernel_invokes.f90"),
>>>               api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = Dynamo0p3ColourTrans()
>>> otrans = DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
>>>
>>> # Then apply OpenMP to each of the colour loops
>>> schedule = cschedule
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newsched, _ = otrans.apply(child.children[0])
>>>
>>> newsched.view()

```

Colouring in the Dynamo 0.3 API is subject to the following rules:

- Only kernels with an iteration space of CELLS and which modify a continuous field require colouring. Any other type of loop will cause this transformation to raise an exception.
- A kernel may have at most one field with ‘INC’ access
- A separate colour map will be required for each field that is coloured (if an invoke contains >1 kernel call)

**apply** (*node*)

Performs Dynamo0.3-specific error checking and then uses the parent class to convert the Loop represented by *node* into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour.

**Parameters** *node* (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop`) – the loop to transform.

**Returns** 2-tuple of new schedule and memento of transform

**Return type** (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynInvokeSchedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans`

Modifies a kernel so that the number of dofs, number of layers and number of quadrature points are fixed in the kernel rather than being passed in by argument.

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans()
>>> for kernel in schedule.coded_kernels():
>>>     new_schedule, _ = trans.apply(kernel, number_of_layers=150)
>>>     kernel_schedule = kernel.get_kernel_schedule()
>>>     kernel_schedule.symbol_table.view()

```

**apply** (*node*, *cellshape*='quadrilateral', *element\_order*=None, *number\_of\_layers*=None, *quadrature*=False)

Transforms a kernel so that the values for the number of degrees of freedom (if a valid value for the *element\_order* arg is provided), the number of quadrature points (if the *quadrature* arg is set to True) and the number of layers (if a valid value for the *number\_of\_layers* arg is provided) are constant in a kernel rather than being passed in by argument.

The “*cellshape*”, “*element\_order*” and “*number\_of\_layers*” arguments are provided to mirror the namelist values that are input into an LFRic model when it is run.

Quadrature support is currently limited to XYoZ in this transformation. In the case of XYoZ the number of quadrature points (for horizontal and vertical) are set to the *element\_order* + 3 in the LFRic infrastructure

so their value is derived.

#### Parameters

- **node** (`psyclone.psygen.DynKern`) – a kernel node.
- **cellshape** (*str*) – the shape of the cells. This is provided as it helps determine the number of dofs a field has for a particular function space. Currently only “quadrilateral” is supported which is also the default value.
- **element\_order** (*int*) – the order of the cell. In combination with cellshape, this determines the number of dofs a field has for a particular function space. If it is set to None (the default) then the dofs values are not set as constants in the kernel, otherwise they are.
- **number\_of\_layers** (*int*) – the number of vertical layers in the LFRic model mesh used for this particular run. If this is set to None (the default) then the nlayers value is not set as a constant in the kernel, otherwise it is.
- **quadrature** (*bool*) – whether the number of quadrature points values are set as constants in the kernel (True) or not (False). The default is False.

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

**Return type** *str*

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3OMPLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

Dynamo 0.3 specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo-specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by *base class*.

**apply** (*node*, *reprod=None*)

Perform Dynamo 0.3 specific loop validity checks then call `OMPLoopTrans.apply()`.

#### Parameters

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the Node in the Schedule to check
- **reprod** (*bool or None (default, which indicates to use the default from the config file)*) – if reproducible reductions should be used.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if an OMP loop transform would create incorrect code.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans`

This transformation allows the user to modify a loop’s bounds so that redundant computation will be performed. Redundant computation can result in halo exchanges being modified, new halo exchanges being added or existing halo exchanges being removed.

- This transformation should be performed before any parallelisation transformations (e.g. for OpenMP) to the loop in question and will raise an exception if this is not the case.
- This transformation can not be applied to a loop containing a reduction and will again raise an exception if this is the case.
- This transformation can only be used to add redundant computation to a loop, not to remove it.

- This transformation allows a loop that is already performing redundant computation to be modified, but only if the depth is increased.

**apply** (*loop*, *depth=None*)

Apply the redundant computation transformation to the loop `loop`. This transformation can be applied to loops iterating over ‘cells’ or ‘dofs’. if `depth` is set to a value then the value will be the depth of the field’s halo over which redundant computation will be performed. If `depth` is not set to a value then redundant computation will be performed to the full depth of the field’s halo.

#### Parameters

- **loop** (`psyclone.psyGen.DynLoop`) – the loop that we are transforming
- **depth** (*int* or *None*) – the depth of the stencil. Defaults to *None* if a depth is not provided.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.



## GOCEAN1.0 API

### 11.1 Introduction

The GOcean 1.0 application programming interface (API) was originally designed to support ocean models that use the finite-difference scheme for two-dimensional domains. However, the approach is not specific to ocean models and can potentially be applied to any finite-difference code.

As with all PSyclone APIs, the GOcean 1.0 API specifies how a user must write the Algorithm Layer and the Kernel Layer to allow PSyclone to generate the PSy Layer. These Algorithm and Kernel APIs are discussed separately in the sections below. Before these we describe the functionality provided by the GOcean Library.

### 11.2 The GOcean Library

The use of PSyclone and the GOcean 1.0 API implies the use of a standard set of data types and associated infrastructure. This is provided by version 1.0 of the GOcean Library (GOLib v.1.0). Currently this library is distributed separately from PSyclone and is available from <http://puma.nerc.ac.uk/trac/GOcean>.

#### 11.2.1 Grid

The GOLib contains a `grid_mod` module which defines a `grid_type` and associated constructor:

```
use grid_mod
...
!> The grid on which our fields are defined
type(grid_type), target :: model_grid
...
! Create the model grid
model_grid = grid_type(GO_ARAKAWA_C,                                &
                      (/GO_BC_EXTERNAL, GO_BC_EXTERNAL, GO_BC_NONE/), &
                      GO_OFFSET_NE)
```

---

**Note:** The grid object itself must be declared with the `target` attribute. This is because each field object will contain a pointer to it.

---

The `grid_type` constructor takes three arguments:

1. The type of grid (only `GO_ARAKAWA_C` is currently supported)
2. The boundary conditions on the domain for the  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  dimensions (see below). The value for the  $z$  dimension is currently ignored.

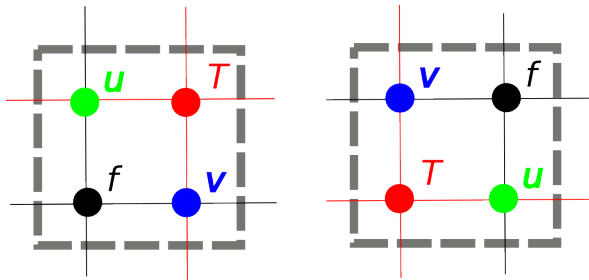
3. The ‘index offset’ - the convention used for indexing into offset fields.

Three types of boundary condition are currently supported:

Name	Description
GO_BC_NONE	No boundary conditions are applied.
GO_BC_EXTERNAL	Some external forcing is applied. This must be implemented by a kernel. The domain must be defined with a T-point mask (see <a href="#">The grid_init Routine</a> ).
GO_BC_PERIODIC	Periodic boundary conditions are applied.

The infrastructure requires this information in order to determine the extent of the model grid.

The index offset is required because a model (kernel) developer has choice in how they actually implement the staggering of variables on a grid. This comes down to a choice of which grid points in the vicinity of a given T point have the same array  $(i, j)$  indices. In the diagram below, the image on the left corresponds to choosing those points to the South and West of a T point to have the same  $(i, j)$  index. That on the right corresponds to choosing those points to the North and East of the T point (this is the offset scheme used in the NEMO ocean model):



The GOcean 1.0 API supports these two different offset schemes, which we term `GO_OFFSET_SW` and `GO_OFFSET_NE`.

Note that the constructor does not specify the extent of the model grid. This is because this information is normally obtained by reading a file (a namelist file, a netcdf file etc.) which is specific to an application. Once this information has been obtained, a second routine, `grid_init`, is provided with which to ‘load’ a grid object with state. This is discussed below.

## The `grid_init` Routine

Once an application has determined the details of the model configuration, it must use this information to populate the grid object. This is done via a call to the `grid_init` subroutine:

```

subroutine grid_init(grid, m, n, dxarg, dyarg, tmask)
  !> The grid object to configure
  type(grid_type), intent(inout) :: grid
  !> Dimensions of the model grid
  integer, intent(in) :: m, n
  !> The (constant) grid spacing in x and y (m)
  real(wp), intent(in) :: dxarg, dyarg
  !> Optional T-point mask specifying whether each grid point is
  !! wet (1), dry (0) or external (-1).
  integer, dimension(m,n), intent(in), optional :: tmask

```

If no T-mask is supplied then this routine configures the grid appropriately for an all-wet domain with periodic boundary conditions in both the  $x$ - and  $y$ -dimensions. It should also be noted that currently only grids with constant resolution in  $x$  and  $y$  are supported by this routine.



### 11.2.2 Fields

Once a model has a grid defined it will require one or more fields. The GOLib contains a `field_mod` module which defines an `r2d_field` type (real, 2-dimensional field) and associated constructor:

```
use field_mod
...
!> Current ('now') sea-surface height at different grid points
type(r2d_field) :: sshn_u_fld, sshn_v_fld, sshn_t_fld
...

! Sea-surface height now (current time step)
sshn_u = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_U_POINTS)
sshn_v = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_V_POINTS)
sshn_t = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_T_POINTS)
```

The constructor takes two arguments:

1. The grid on which the field exists
2. The type of grid point at which the field is defined (GO\_U\_POINTS, GO\_V\_POINTS, GO\_T\_POINTS or GO\_F\_POINTS)

Note that the grid object need not have been fully configured (by a call to `grid_init` for instance) before it is passed into this constructor.

### 11.2.3 Example

PSyclone is distributed with a full example of the use of the GOcean Library. See <PSYCLONEHOME>/examples/gocean/shallow\_alg.f90. In what follows we will walk through a slightly cut-down example for a different program.

The following code illustrates the use of the GOLib in constructing an application:

```
program gocean2d
  use grid_mod   ! From dl_esm_inf
  use field_mod  ! From dl_esm_inf
  use model_mod
  use boundary_conditions_mod

  !> The grid on which our fields are defined. Must have the 'target'
  !! attribute because each field object contains a pointer to it.
  type(grid_type), target :: model_grid

  !> Current ('now') velocity component fields
  type(r2d_field) :: un_fld, vn_fld
  !> 'After' velocity component fields
  type(r2d_field) :: ua_fld, va_fld
  ...

  ! time stepping index
  integer :: istp

  ! Create the model grid. We use a NE offset (i.e. the U, V and F
  ! points immediately to the North and East of a T point all have the
  ! same i,j index). This is the same offset scheme as used by NEMO.
  model_grid = grid_type(GO_ARAKAWA_C,
```

&

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

                                (/GO_BC_EXTERNAL,GO_BC_EXTERNAL,GO_BC_NONE/), &
                                GO_OFFSET_NE)

!! read in model parameters and configure the model grid
CALL model_init(model_grid)

! Create fields on this grid

! Velocity components now (current time step)
un_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_U_POINTS)
vn_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_V_POINTS)

! Velocity components 'after' (next time step)
ua_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_U_POINTS)
va_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_V_POINTS)

...

!! time stepping
do istp = nit000, nitend, 1

    call step(istp,
              ua_fld, va_fld, un_fld, vn_fld,
              ...)

end do
...
end program gocean2d

```

The `model_init` routine is application specific since it must determine details of the model configuration being run, e.g. by reading a namelist file. An example might look something like:

```

subroutine model_init(grid)
  type(grid_type), intent(inout) :: grid

  !> Problem size, read from namelist
  integer :: jpiglo, jpjglo
  real(wp) :: dx, dy
  integer, dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: tmask

  ! Read model configuration from namelist
  call read_namelist(jpiglo, jpjglo, dx, dy, &
                    nit000, nitend, irecord, &
                    jphgr_msh, dep_const, rdt, cbfr, visc)

  ! Set-up the T mask. This defines the model domain.
  allocate(tmask(jpiglo, jpjglo))

  call setup_tpoints_mask(jpiglo, jpjglo, tmask)

  ! Having specified the T points mask, we can set up mesh parameters
  call grid_init(grid, jpiglo, jpjglo, dx, dy, tmask)

  ! Clean-up. T-mask has been copied into the grid object.
  deallocate(tmask)

end subroutine model_init

```

Here, only `grid_type` and the `grid_init` routine come from the GOLib. The remaining code is all application specific.

Once the grid object is fully configured and all fields have been constructed, a simulation will proceed by performing calculations with those fields. In the example program given above, this calculation is performed in the time-stepping loop within the `step` subroutine. The way in which this routine uses Invoke calls is described in the [Invokes](#) Section.

## 11.3 Algorithm

The Algorithm is the top-level specification of the natural science implemented in the software. Essentially it consists of mesh setup, field declarations, initialisation of fields and (a series of) Kernel calls. Infrastructure to support these tasks is provided in version 1.0 of the GOcean library (see [The GOcean Library](#)).

### 11.3.1 Invokes

The Kernels to call are specified through the use of Invokes, e.g.:

```
call invoke( kernel1(field1, field2),      &
             kernel2(field1, field3)      &
           )
```

The location and number of these `call invoke(...)` statements within the source code is entirely up to the user. The only requirement is that PSyclone must be run on every source file that contains one or more Invokes. The body of each Invoke specifies the kernels to be called, the order in which they are to be applied and the fields (and scalars) that they work with.

Note that the kernel names specified in an Invoke are the names of the corresponding kernel *types* defined in the kernel metadata (see the [Kernel](#) Section). These are not the same as the names of the Fortran subroutines which contain the actual kernel code. The kernel arguments are typically field objects, as described in the [Fields](#) Section, but they may also be scalar quantities (real or integer).

In the example `gocean2d` program shown earlier, there is only one Invoke call and it is contained within the `step` subroutine:

```
subroutine step(istp,      &
               ua, va, un, vn,      &
               sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v, &
               ssha_t, ssha_u, ssha_v, &
               hu, hv, ht)
  use kind_params_mod ! From dl_esm_inf
  use grid_mod        ! From dl_esm_inf
  use field_mod        ! From dl_esm_inf
  use model_mod, only: rdt ! The model time-step
  use continuity_mod,  only: continuity
  use momentum_mod,    only: momentum_u, momentum_v
  use boundary_conditions_mod, only: bc_ssh, bc_solid_u
  !> The current time step
  integer,          intent(inout) :: istp
  type(r2d_field),  intent(inout) :: un, vn, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v
  type(r2d_field),  intent(inout) :: ua, va, ssha_t, ssha_u, ssha_v
  type(r2d_field),  intent(inout) :: hu, hv, ht

  call invoke(
    continuity(ssha_t, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v,      &
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

        hu, hv, un, vn, rdt),          &
        momentum_u(ua, un, vn, hu, hv, ht,          &
        ssha_u, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v),          &
        momentum_v(va, un, vn, hu, hv, ht,          &
        ssha_v, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v),          &
        bc_ssh(istp, ssha_t),          &
        bc_solid_u(ua),          &
        ...
    )
end subroutine step

```

Note that in this example the grid was constructed for a model with ‘external’ boundary conditions. These boundary conditions are applied through several user-supplied kernels, two of which (`bc_ssh` and `bc_solid_u`) are include in the above code fragment.

## 11.4 Kernel

The general requirements for the structure of a Kernel are explained in the [Kernel layer](#) section. This section explains the metadata and subroutine arguments that are specific to the GOcean 1.0 API.

### 11.4.1 Metadata

The metadata for a GOcean 1.0 API kernel has four components:

- 1) ‘meta\_args’,
- 2) ‘iterates\_over’,
- 3) ‘index\_offset’ and
- 4) ‘procedure’:

These are illustrated in the code below:

```

type, extends(kernel_type) :: my_kernel_type
  type(go_arg), dimension(...) :: meta_args = (/ ... /)
  integer :: iterates_over = ...
  integer :: index_offset = ...
contains
  procedure, nopass :: code => my_kernel_code
end type my_kernel_type

```

These four metadata elements are discussed in order in the following sections.

#### Argument Metadata: meta\_args

The `meta_args` array specifies information about data that the kernel code expects to be passed to it via its argument list. There is one entry in the `meta_args` array for each **scalar**, **field**, or **grid-property** passed into the Kernel. Their ordering in the `meta_args` array must be the same as that in the kernel code argument list. The entry must be of type `go_arg` which itself contains metadata about the associated argument. The size of the `meta_args` array must correspond to the total number of **scalars**, **fields** and **grid properties** passed into the Kernel.

For example, if there are a total of two **field** entities being passed to the Kernel then the `meta_args` array will be of size 2 and there will be two entries of type `GO_arg`:

```

type(GO_arg) :: meta_args(2) = (/                                &
    go_arg( ... ),                                              &
    go_arg( ... )                                              &
    /)

```

Argument-metadata (metadata contained within the brackets of an `go_arg` entry), describes either a **scalar**, a **field** or a **grid property**.

The first argument-metadata entry describes how the kernel will access the corresponding argument. As an example, the following `meta_args` metadata describes four entries, the first one is written to by the kernel while the remaining three are only read.

```

type(go_arg) :: meta_args(4) = (/                                &
    go_arg(GO_WRITE, ... ),                                    &
    go_arg(GO_READ, ... ),                                    &
    go_arg(GO_READ, ... ),                                    &
    go_arg(GO_READ, ... )                                     &
    /)

```

The second entry to argument-metadata (information contained within the brackets of an `go_arg` type) describes the type of data represented by the argument. This type falls into three categories; field data, scalar data and grid properties. For field data the metadata entry consists of the type of grid-point that field values are defined on. Since the GOcean API supports fields on an Arakawa C grid, the possible grid-point types are `GO_CU`, `GO_CV`, `GO_CF` and `GO_CT`. GOcean Kernels can also take scalar quantities as arguments. Since these do not live on grid-points they are specified as either `GO_R_SCALAR` or `GO_I_SCALAR` depending on whether the corresponding Fortran variable is a real or integer quantity. Finally, grid-property entries are used to specify any properties of the grid required by the kernel (*e.g.* the area of cells at U points or whether T points are wet or dry).

For example:

```

type(go_arg) :: meta_args(4) = (/                                &
    go_arg(GO_WRITE, GO_CT, ... ),                            &
    go_arg(GO_READ, GO_CU, ... ),                             &
    go_arg(GO_READ, GO_R_SCALAR, ... ),                       &
    go_arg(GO_READ, GO_GRID_AREA_U)                          &
    /)

```

Here, the first argument is a field on T points, the second is a field on U points, the fourth is a real scalar and the fifth is a property of the grid (cell area at U points).

The full list of supported grid properties in the GOcean 1.0 API is:

Name	Description	Type
go_grid_area_t	Cell area at T point	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_area_u	Cell area at U point	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_area_v	Cell area at V point	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_mask_t	T-point mask (1=wet, 0=dry)	Integer array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_t	Grid spacing in x at T points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_u	Grid spacing in x at U points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_v	Grid spacing in x at V points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dy_t	Grid spacing in y at T points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dy_u	Grid spacing in y at U points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dy_v	Grid spacing in y at V points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_lat_u	Latitude of U points (gphiu)	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_lat_v	Latitude of V points (gphiv)	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_const	Grid spacing in x if constant	Real, scalar
go_grid_dy_const	Grid spacing in y if constant	Real, scalar
go_grid_x_min_index	Minimum X index	Integer, scalar
go_grid_x_max_index	Maximum X index	Integer, scalar
go_grid_y_min_index	Minimum Y index	Integer, scalar
go_grid_y_max_index	Maximum Y index	Integer, scalar

These are stored in a dictionary named `GRID_PROPERTY_DICT` at the top of the `gocean1p0.py` file. All of the rank-two arrays have the first rank as longitude ( $x$ ) and the second as latitude ( $y$ ).

Scalars and fields contain a third argument-metadata entry which describes whether the kernel accesses the corresponding argument with a stencil. The value `GO_POINTWISE` indicates that there is no stencil access. Metadata for a scalar field is limited to this value. Grid-property arguments have no third metadata argument. If there are no stencil accesses then the full argument metadata for our previous example will be:

```
type(go_arg) :: meta_args(4) = (/
    go_arg(GO_WRITE, GO_CT,      GO_POINTWISE), &
    go_arg(GO_READ,  GO_CU,      GO_POINTWISE), &
    go_arg(GO_READ,  GO_R_SCALAR, GO_POINTWISE), &
    go_arg(GO_READ,  GO_GRID_AREA_U)           &
    /)
```

If a kernel accesses a field using a stencil then the third argument metadata entry should take the form `go_stencil(...)`. Note, a stencil access is only allowed for a field that is `READ` by a kernel.

In the GOCean API, fields are implemented as two-dimensional arrays. In Fortran, a standard 5-point stencil would look something like the following:

```
a(i,j) + a(i+1,j) + a(i-1,j) + a(i,j+1) + a(i,j-1)
```

If we view the above accesses as co-ordinates relative to the `a(i,j)` access we get `(0,0)`, `(1,0)`, `(-1,0)`, `(0,1)`, `(0,-1)`. If we then view these accesses in graphical form with  $i$  being in the horizontal direction and  $j$  in the vertical and with a 1 indicating a (depth-1) access and a 0 indicating there is no access we get the following:

```
010
111
010
```

In the GOCean API a stencil access is captured as a triplet of integers (one row at a time from top to bottom) using the above view i.e.

```
go_stencil(010,111,010)
```

So far we have only considered depth-1 stencils. In our notation the depth of access is captured by the integer value (0 for no access, 1 for depth 1, 2 for depth 2 etc). For example:

```
a(i,j) + a(i,j+1) + a(i,j+2)
```

would be captured as:

```
go_stencil(020,010,000)
```

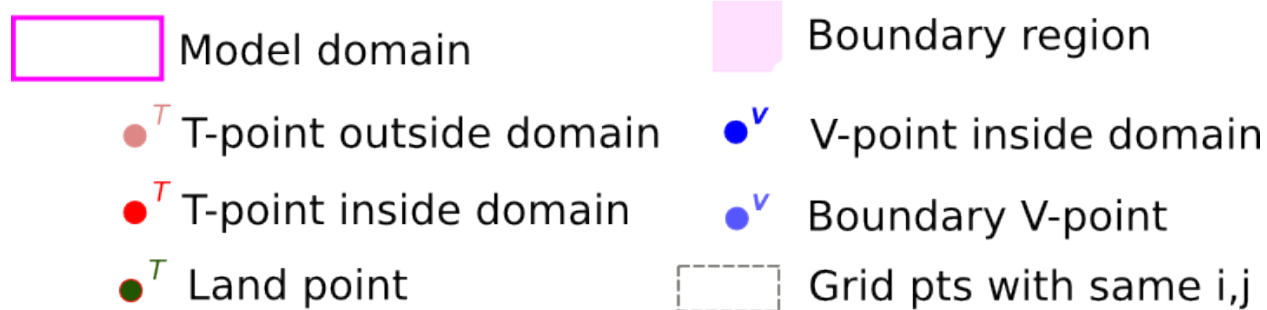
All forms of stencil can be **summarised** using this triplet notation up to a depth of 9 apart from the central  $a(i, j)$  value which can either be 0 (not accessed) or 1 (accessed). Note, the central value is not currently used by PSyclone. The notation is a **summary** in two ways

- 1) it only captures the depth of the stencil in a particular direction, not the actual accesses. Therefore, there is no way to distinguish between the stencil  $a(i+2, j)$  and the stencil  $a(i+1, j) + a(i+2, j)$ .
- 2) when there are offsets for both  $i$  and  $j$  e.g.  $a(i+1, j+1)$  it only captures whether there is an access in that direction at a particular depth, not the details of the access. For example, there is no way to distinguish between  $a(i+2, j+2)$  and  $a(i+2, j+2) + a(i+1, j+2) + a(i+2, j+1)$ .

Whilst the description is a summary, it is accurate enough for PSyclone as this information is primarily used to determine which grid partitions must communicate with which for the purposes of placing halo exchange calls. In this case, it is the depth and direction information that is most important.

## Iterates Over

The second element of kernel metadata is `ITERATES_OVER`. This specifies that the Kernel has been written with the assumption that it is iterating over grid points of the specified type. By default the supported values are: `GO_INTERNAL_PTS`, `GO_EXTERNAL_PTS` and `GO_ALL_PTS`. These may be understood by considering the following diagram of an example model configuration:



GO\_INTERNAL\_PTS are then those points that are within the Model domain (fuchsia box), GO\_EXTERNAL\_PTS are



those outside the domain and `GO_ALL_PTS` encompasses all grid points in the model. The chosen value is specified in the kernel-meta data like so:

```
integer :: iterates_over = GO_INTERNAL_PTS
```

A user can use a config file (see [Configuration](#)) to add additional iteration spaces to PSyclone.

## Index Offset

The third element of kernel metadata, `INDEX_OFFSET`, specifies the index-offset that the kernel uses. This is the same quantity as supplied to the grid constructor (see the [Grid](#) Section for a description).

The GOcean 1.0 API supports two different offset schemes; `GO_OFFSET_NE`, `GO_OFFSET_SW`. The scheme used by a kernel is specified in the metadata as, e.g.:

```
integer :: index_offset = GO_OFFSET_NE
```

Currently all kernels used in an application must use the same offset scheme which must also be the same as passed to the grid constructor.

## Procedure

The fourth and final type of metadata is `procedure` metadata. This specifies the name of the Kernel Fortran subroutine that this metadata describes.

For example:

```
procedure :: my_kernel_code
```

## 11.4.2 Subroutine

### Rules

Kernel arguments follow a set of rules which have been specified for the GOcean 1.0 API. These rules are encoded in the `gen_code()` method of the `GOKern` class in the `goceanlp0.py` file. The rules, along with PSyclone's naming conventions, are:

- 1) Every kernel has the indices of the current grid point as the first two arguments, `i` and `j`. These are integers and have intent `in`.
- 2) For each field/scalar/grid property in the order specified by the `meta_args` metadata:
  - 1) For a field; the field array itself. A field array is a real array of kind `go_wp` and rank two. The first rank is longitude (`x`) and the second latitude (`y`).
  - 2) For a scalar; the variable itself. A real scalar is of kind `go_wp`.
  - 3) For a grid property; the array or variable (see the earlier table) containing the specified property.

---

**Note:** Grid properties are not passed from the Algorithm Layer. PSyclone generates the necessary lookups in the PSy Layer and includes the resulting references in the arguments passed to the kernel.

---

As an example, consider the `bc_solid_u` kernel that is used in the `gocean2d` program shown earlier. The metadata for this kernel is:

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: bc_solid_u
  type(go_arg), dimension(2) :: meta_args = &
    (/ go_arg(GO_WRITE, GO_CU, GO_POINTWISE),      &
      go_arg(GO_READ,      GO_GRID_MASK_T)        &
    /)

  !> This is a boundary-conditions kernel and therefore
  !! acts on all points of the domain rather than just
  !! those that are internal
  integer :: ITERATES_OVER = GO_ALL_PTS

  integer :: index_offset = GO_OFFSET_NE

contains
  procedure, nopass :: code => bc_solid_u_code
end type bc_solid_u
```

The interface to the subroutine containing the implementation of this kernel is:

```
subroutine bc_solid_u_code(ji, jj, ua, tmask)
  integer,          intent(in)    :: ji, jj
  integer, dimension(:, :), intent(in) :: tmask
  real(wp), dimension(:, :), intent(inout) :: ua
```

As described above, the first two arguments to this subroutine specify the grid-point at which the computation is to be performed. The third argument is the field that this kernel updates and the fourth argument is the T-point mask. The latter is a property of the grid and is provided to the kernel call from the PSy Layer.

Comparing this interface definition with the use of the kernel in the Invoke call:

```
call invoke ( ...,      &
             bc_solid_u(ua), &
             ... )
```

we see that in the Algorithm Layer the user need only provide the field(s) (and possibly scalars) that a kernel operates on. The index of the grid point and any grid properties are provided in the (generated) PSy Layer where the kernel subroutine proper is called.

## 11.5 Built-ins

The GOcean 1.0 API does not support any built-in operations.

## 11.6 Conventions

The GOcean 1.0 API kernel code conforms to the PSyclone Fortran naming conventions (see *Fortran Naming Conventions*). However, PSyclone's support for the GOcean 1.0 API does not rely on this convention.

The contents of the kernel metadata is usually declared private but this does not affect PSyclone.

Finally, the `procedure` metadata (located within the kernel metadata) usually has `nopass` specified but again this is ignored by PSyclone.

## 11.7 Configuration

The configuration file (see [Configuration](#)) used by PSyclone can contain GOcean 1.0 specific options. For example, after the default section the GOcean 1.0 specific section looks like this:

```
[gocean1.0]
iteration-spaces=offset_sw:ct:test_only:1:2:3:4
                offset_sw:ct:internal_ns_halo:{start}-1:{stop}+1:{start}:{stop}
```

The supported keys are listed in the next section.

### 11.7.1 Iteration-spaces

This section lists additional iteration spaces that can be used in a kernel metadata declaration to allow PSyclone to create a loop with different loop boundaries. Each line of the `iteration-spaces` declaration contains 7 values, separated by `:`. The fields are:

Field	Description	Details
1	Index Offset	See <i>Index Offset</i> .
2	grid-point types	See <i>Grid point types</i> .
3	Iterates Over	See <i>Iterates Over</i> .
4	Start index of outer loop	Start index of North-South loop.
5	End index of outer loop	End index of North-South loop.
6	Start index of inner loop	Start index of East-West loop.
7	End index of inner loop	End index of East-West loop.

Two special variables can be used in an iteration space: `{start}` and `{stop}`. These values will be replaced by PSyclone with the correct loop boundaries for the inner points of a grid (i.e. the non-halo area). This means that the depth-1 halo region can be specified using `{start}-1` and `{stop}+1`.

For example, given the `iteration-spaces` declaration above, a kernel declared with `iterates_over=internal_ns_halo` for a field type `ct` and index offset `offset_sw` would create the following loop boundaries:

```
DO j=2-1, jstop+1
  DO i=2, istop
    CALL (i, j, ...)
  END DO
END DO
```

**Warning:** With user defined iteration spaces it is possible that PSyclone will create code that does not compile: if you specify syntactically correct, but semantically incorrect boundary definitions, the PSyclone internal tests will accept the new iteration space, but the compiler will not. For example if one of the loop boundaries contains the name of a variable that is not defined, compilation will fail. It is the responsibility of the user to make sure that valid loop boundaries are specified in a new iteration space definition.

## 11.8 Transformations

In this section we describe the transformations that are specific to the GOcean 1.0 API. For an overview of transformations in general see [Transformations](#).

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanExtractRegionTrans`

GOcean1.0 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "gocean1.0"
>>> FILENAME = "shallow_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOceanExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = GOceanExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply GOceanExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> newsched.view()
```

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans`

Performs error checking (that the loops are over the same grid-point type) before calling the `LoopFuseTrans.apply()` method of the *base class* in order to fuse two GOcean loops.

**apply** (*node1*, *node2*)

Fuse the two GOcean loops represented by *node1* and *node2*.

**Parameters**

- **node1** (`psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop`) – A node representing a GOLoop.
- **node2** (`psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop`) – A node representing a GOLoop.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied *node2* can not be fused, e.g. not all nodes are loops, don't have the same parent, are not next to each other or have different iteration spaces.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule*='static')

GOcean specific OpenMP Do loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that supplied Loop is an inner or outer loop). Actual transformation is done by *base class*.

**Parameters** *omp\_schedule* – The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of 'runtime', 'static', 'dynamic', 'guided' or 'auto'.

**apply** (*node*)

Perform GOcean-specific loop validity checks then call `OMPParallelLoopTrans.apply()`.

**Parameters** *node* (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – A Loop node from an AST.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node is not an inner or outer loop.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

---

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

GOcean-specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that the node is either an inner or outer Loop). Actual transformation is done by *base class*.

**Parameters** `omp_schedule` – The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of ‘runtime’, ‘static’, ‘dynamic’, ‘guided’ or ‘auto’.

**apply** (*node*)

Perform GOcean specific loop validity checks then call `OMPLoopTrans.apply()`.

**Parameters** `node` (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`.) – The loop to parallelise using OMP Do.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans`

Switch on (or off) the use of constant loop bounds within a GOInvokeSchedule. In the absence of constant loop bounds, PSyclone will generate loops where the bounds are obtained by de-referencing a field object, e.g.:

```
DO j = my_field%grid%internal%ystart, my_field%grid%internal%ystop
```

Some compilers are able to produce more efficient code if they are provided with information on the relative trip-counts of the loops within an Invoke. With constant loop bounds switched on, PSyclone generates code like:

```
ny = my_field%grid%subdomain%internal%ystop
...
DO j = 1, ny-1
```

In practice, the application of the constant loop bounds looks something like, e.g.:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import os
>>> TEST_API = "gocean1.0"
>>> _, info = parse(os.path.join("tests", "test_files", "goceanlp0",
>>>                               "single_invoke.f90"),
>>>                  api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_compute_cu')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOConstLoopBoundsTrans
>>> clbtrans = GOConstLoopBoundsTrans()
>>>
>>> newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> # or, to turn off const. loop bounds:
>>> # newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule, const_bounds=False)
>>>
>>> newsched.view()
```

**apply** (*node*, *const\_bounds=True*)

Switches constant loop bounds on or off for all loops in a GOInvokeSchedule. Default is ‘on’.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.gocean1p0.GOInvokeSchedule`) – The `GOInvokeSchedule` of which all loops will get the constant loop bounds switched on or off.
- **const\_bounds** (*bool*) – If the constant loop should be used (True) or not (False). Default is True.

**name**

Return the name of the Transformation as a string.

---

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans`

Provides a loop-swap transformation, e.g.:

```
DO j=1, m
  DO i=1, n
```

becomes:

```
DO i=1, n
  DO j=1, m
```

This transform is used as follows:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("shallow_alg.f90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("gocean1.0").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOLoopSwapTrans
>>> swap = GOLoopSwapTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = swap.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

**apply** (*outer*)

The argument *outer* must be a loop which has exactly one inner loop. This transform then swaps the outer and inner loop.

**Parameters** **outer** (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – The node representing the outer loop.

**Returns** A tuple consisting of the new schedule, and a Memento.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node does not allow a loop swap to be done.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## NEMO API

In contrast to the other APIs supported by PSyclone, the NEMO API is designed to work with source code that does *not* follow the PSyKAl separation of concerns. Instead, the NEMO source code is treated as if it were a manually written PSy layer with all kernels in-lined. This approach relies upon the NEMO Coding Conventions [nem13] in order to reason about the code being processed. Rather than construct an InvokeSchedule for the PSy layer from scratch (as is done for other APIs), the InvokeSchedule is constructed by parsing the supplied Fortran code and generating a higher-level representation.

---

**Note:** the NEMO API is currently only a prototype. The known issues are listed in [Limitations](#).

---

### 12.1 Algorithm

Since NEMO source is treated as a pre-existing PSy layer, this API does not have the concept of an Algorithm layer.

### 12.2 Constructing the PSyIR

Transformations in PSyclone are applied to an Internal Representation, the “PSyIR.” In contrast to the other APIs where the PSyIR is constructed from scratch, for NEMO PSyclone must parse the existing Fortran and create a higher-level representation of it. This is done using rules based upon the NEMO Coding Conventions [nem13]. These rules are described in the following sections.

#### 12.2.1 Loops

##### Explicit

PSyclone recognises the following loop types, based on the name of the loop variable:

Loop type	Loop variable
Vertical levels	jk
Latitude	ji
Longitude	jj
Tracer species	jn

PSyclone currently assumes that each of these loop types may be safely parallelised. In practice this will not always be the case (e.g. when performing a tri-diagonal solve) and this implementation will need to be refined.

## Implicit

The use of Fortran array notation is encouraged in the NEMO Coding Conventions [nem13] (section 4.2) and is employed throughout the NEMO code base. The Coding Conventions mandate that the shape of every array in such expressions must be specified, e.g.:

```
onedarraya(:) = onedarrayb(:) + onedarrayc(:)
twodarray (:,:) = scalar * anotheartwodarray(:,:)
```

PSyclone therefore also recognises the loops implied by this notation.

It has been found by CMCC and Intel that the Intel compiler is better able to OpenMP-parallelise explicit loops. Therefore, PSyclone provides a transformation to allow the user to convert implicit loops into explicit loop nests (see *Transformations*). However, as with all compiler-specific optimisations, whether or not this transformation is beneficial will depend on the precise details of the compiler being used.

Note, not all uses of Fortran array notation in NEMO imply a loop. For instance:

```
ascalar = afunc(twodarray(:,:))
```

is actually a function call which is passed a reference to `twodarray`. However, if the quantity being assigned to is actually an array, e.g.:

```
twodarray2(:,:) = afunc(twodarray(:,:))
```

then this does represent a loop. However, currently PSyclone does not recognise any occurrences of array notation that are themselves within an array access or function call. It is therefore not yet possible to transform such implicit loops into explicit loops. It is hoped that this limitation will be removed in future releases of PSyclone by adding the ability to discover the interface to functions such as `afunc` and thus determining whether they return scalar or array quantities.

## 12.3 Example

A typical fragment of NEMO source code (taken from the `traldf_iso` routine) is shown below:

```
DO jn = 1, kjpt
  zdit (1,::) = 0._wp      ;      zdit (jpi,::) = 0._wp
  zdjt (1,::) = 0._wp      ;      zdjt (jpi,::) = 0._wp

  DO jk = 1, jpkml
    DO jj = 1, jpjml
      DO ji = 1, fs_jpiml
        zdit(ji,jj,jk) = ( ptb(ji+1,jj ,jk,jn) - ptb(ji,jj,jk,jn) ) * umask(ji,jj,
↪ jk)
        zdjt(ji,jj,jk) = ( ptb(ji ,jj+1,jk,jn) - ptb(ji,jj,jk,jn) ) * vmask(ji,jj,
↪ jk)
      END DO
    END DO
  END DO
```

PSyclone uses `fparser2` to parse such source code and then generates the PSy Internal Representation of it:

```
Loop[type='tracers',field_space='None',it_space='None']
  Loop[type='None',field_space='None',it_space='None']
    Loop[type='None',field_space='None',it_space='None']
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

Loop[type='None', field_space='None', it_space='None']
Loop[type='None', field_space='None', it_space='None']
Loop[type='levels', field_space='None', it_space='None']
    Loop[type='lat', field_space='None', it_space='None']
        Loop[type='lon', field_space='None', it_space='None']
            CodedKern[]

```

## 12.4 Transformations

This section describes the transformations that are specific to the NEMO API. For an overview of transformations in general see *Transformations*.

### **class** `psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans`

Transforms the outermost array slice in an implicit loop in a NEMOInvokeSchedule into an explicit loop. For example, if “implicit\_loop.f90” contained:

```
my_array(:, :, :) = 1.0
```

then doing:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "nemo"
>>> filename = "implicit_loop.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import NemoExplicitLoopTrans
>>> rtrans = NemoExplicitLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> loop = schedule.children[0]
>>> newloop, _ = rtrans.apply(loop)

```

will create a new NemoLoop object for an explicit loop over levels (the outermost slice) that then contains an implicit loop:

```

DO jk = 1, jpk
  my_array(:, :, jk) = 1.0
END DO

```

Subsequently applying *rtrans* to *newloop* will create:

```

DO jk = 1, jpk
  DO jj = 1, jpj
    my_array(:, jj, jk) = 1.0
  END DO
END DO

```

### **apply** (*loop*)

Transform the outermost array slice in the supplied implicit loop into an explicit loop.

**Parameters** **loop** (`psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop`) – the `NemoImplicitLoop` to transform.

**Returns** a new PSyIR loop object and a memento of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.nemo.NemoLoop`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**Raises**

- **NotImplementedError** – if the array slice has explicit bounds.
- **TransformationError** – if an array slice is not in dimensions 1-3 of the array.

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

**Return type** `str`

**validate** (*loop*)

Check that the supplied loop is a valid target for this transformation.

**Parameters** **loop** (`psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop`) – the loop node to validate.

**Raises** **TransformationError** – if the supplied loop is not a `NemoImplicitLoop`.

The type of the loop being transformed is inferred from the position of the colon(s) in the array subscripts. Since NEMO uses *(ji,jj,jk)* index ordering (longitude, latitude, levels) this means that loop types are determined according to the following table:

Array index	Loop type	Loop limits
1	Longitude	1, jpi
2	Latitude	1, jpj
3	Vertical levels	1, jpk

If this transformation encounters an implicit loop in an array index other than 1-3 then currently PSyclone will raise an error.

## 12.5 Limitations

The NEMO API is currently only a prototype implementation. Here we list the current, known limitations/issues:

1. When transforming implicit loops into explicit loops, the declaration of the loop variables can be repeated (there is an x-failing test for this);
2. Scalar variables inside loops are not made private when parallelising using OpenMP;
3. All recognised loops (levels, latitude etc.) are assumed to be parallelisable. This will not always be the case (e.g. tridiagonal solve has a loop-carried dependence in the vertical);
4. Labelled do-loops are not handled (i.e. they will be put inside a ‘CodeBlock’ in the PSyIR);
5. Loops are currently only permitted to contain one kernel. This restriction will have to be lifted in order to permit loop fusion;
6. Array slices with specified bounds (e.g. `umask(1:10)`) are not yet supported and will raise a `TransformationError` when attempting to transform them into explicit loops;
7. When generating new variable names, no attempt is made to avoid clashing with variables already present in the NEMO source. This needs to be resolved by querying the `SymbolTable` (#381);
8. The `psyGen.Node` base class now has an `_ast` property to hold a pointer into the associated `fparser2` AST. However, the `psyGen.Kern` class already has an `_fp2_ast` property that points to the whole `fparser2` AST of the kernel code. This will be rationalised in #241.

## STUB GENERATION

### 13.1 Quick Start

- 1) Use an existing Kernel file or create a Kernel file containing a Kernel module with the required metadata and an empty Kernel subroutine with no arguments.
- 2) Run the following command

```
> genkernelstub <PATH>/my_file.f90
```

### 13.2 Introduction

PSyclone provides a kernel stub generator for the Dynamo0.3 API. The kernel stub generator takes a kernel file as input and outputs the kernel subroutine arguments and declarations. The word “stub” is used to indicate that it is only the subroutine arguments and their declarations that are generated; the subroutine has no content.

The primary reason the stub generator is useful is that it generates the correct Kernel subroutine arguments and declarations for the Dynamo0.3 API as specified by the Kernel metadata. As the number of arguments to Kernel subroutines can become large and the arguments have to follow a particular order, it can become burdensome, and potentially error prone, for the user to have to work out the appropriate argument list if written by hand.

The stub generator can be used when creating a new Kernel. A Kernel can first be written to specify the required metadata and then the generator can be used to create the appropriate (empty) Kernel subroutine. The user can then fill in the content of the subroutine.

The stub generator can also be used to check whether the arguments for an existing Kernel are correct i.e. whether the Kernel subroutine and Kernel metadata are consistent. One example would be where a Kernel is updated resulting in a change to the metadata and subroutine arguments.

The Dynamo0.3 API requires Kernels to conform to a set of rules which determine the required arguments and types for a particular Kernel. These rules are required as the generated PSy layer needs to know exactly how to call a Kernel. These rules are outlined in Section [Rules](#).

Therefore PSyclone has been coded with the Dynamo0.3 API rules which are then applied when reading the Kernel metadata to produce the require Kernel call and its arguments in the generated PSy layer. These same rules are used by the Kernel stub generator to produce Kernel subroutine stubs, thereby guaranteeing that Kernel calls from the PSy layer and the associated Kernel subroutines are consistent.

## 13.3 Use

Before using the stub generator, PSyclone must be installed. If you have not already done so, please follow the instructions for setting up PSyclone in Section [Getting Going](#).

PSyclone will be installed in a particular location on your machine, which will be referred to as the `<PSYCLONEINSTALL>` directory. The stub generator script `genkernelstub` comes with the PSyclone installation. A quick check `> which genkernelstub` should return the location of the `<PSYCLONEINSTALL>/bin` directory.

The easiest way to use the stub generator is to run the supplied `genkernelstub` script.

```
> genkernelstub
usage: genkernelstub [-h] [-o OUTFILE] [-api API] [-l] filename
genkernelstub: error: too few arguments
```

You can get information about the `genkernelstub` arguments using `-h` or `--help`:

```
> genkernelstub -h
usage: genkernelstub [-h] [-o OUTFILE] [-api API] [-l] filename

Create Kernel stub code from Kernel metadata

positional arguments:
  filename              Kernel metadata

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  -o OUTFILE, --outfile OUTFILE
                        filename of output
  -api API              choose a particular api from ['dynamo0.3'], default
                        dynamo0.3
  -l, --limit           limit the fortran line length to 132 characters
```

As is indicated when using the `-h` option, the `-api` option only accepts `dynamo0.3` at the moment and is redundant as this option is also the default. However the number of supported APIs is expected to expand in the future.

The `-o`, or `--outfile` option allows the user to specify that the output should be written to a particular file. If `-o` is not specified then the python `print` statement is used. Typically the `print` statement results in the output being printed to the terminal.

The `-l`, or `--limit` option utilises the PSyclone support for wrapping of lines within the 132 character limit (please see the [Line Length](#) chapter for more details).

## 13.4 Kernels

Any Dynamo0.3 kernel can be used as input to the stub generator. Example Kernels can be found in the `examples/dynamo` repository or, for more simple cases, in the `tests/test_files/dynamo0p3` directory. These directories are located in the `<PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone` directory where `<PSYCLONEHOME>` refers to the location where you download or clone PSyclone ([Getting Going](#)).

In the `tests/test_files/dynamo0p3` directory the majority of examples start with `testkern`. The exceptions are: `simple.f90`, `ru_kernel_mod.f90` and `matrix_vector_mod.F90`. The following test kernels can be used to generate kernel stub code (running stub generation from the `<PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone` directory):

```
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_chi_2.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_chi.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_operator_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_operator_nofield_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_orientation.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_operator_orient_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/ru_kernel_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/simple.f90
```

## 13.5 Example

A simple single field example of a kernel that can be used as input for the stub generator is found in `tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/simple.f90` and is shown below:

```
module simple_mod
  type, extends(kernel_type) :: simple_type
    type(arg_type), dimension(1) :: meta_args = &
      (/ arg_type(gh_field,gh_write,w1) /)
    integer :: iterates_over = cells
  contains
    procedure, nopass :: code => simple_code
end type simple_type
contains
  subroutine simple_code()
end subroutine
end module simple_mod
```

**Note:** The module name `simple_mod` and the type name `simple_type` share the same root `simple` and have the extensions `_mod` and `_type` respectively. This is a convention in Dynamo0.3 and is required by the kernel stub generator as it needs to determine the name of the type containing the metadata and infers this by reading the module name. If this rule is not followed the kernel stub generator will return with an error message (see Section [Errors](#)).

**Note:** Whilst strictly the kernel stub generator only requires the Kernel metadata to generate the appropriate stub code, the parser that the generator relies on currently requires a dummy kernel subroutine to exist.

If we run the kernel stub generator on the `simple.f90` example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/simple.f90
```

we get the following kernel stub output:

```
MODULE simple_mod
  IMPLICIT NONE
  CONTAINS
  SUBROUTINE simple_code(nlayers, field_1_w1, ndf_w1, undf_w1, map_w1)
    USE constants_mod, ONLY: r_def
    IMPLICIT NONE
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: nlayers
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w1
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w1
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(out), dimension(undf_w1) :: field_1_w1
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

    INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w1) :: map_w1
END SUBROUTINE simple_code
END MODULE simple_mod

```

The subroutine content can then be copied into the required module, used as the basis for a new module, or checked with an existing subroutine for correctness.

---

**Note:** The output does not currently conform to Met Office coding standards so must be modified accordingly.

---



---

**Note:** The code will not compile without a) providing the `constants_mod`, `argument_mod` and `kernel_mod` modules in the compiler include path and b) adding in code that writes to any arguments declared as `intent out` or `inout`. For a quick check, the `USE` declaration and `KIND` declarations can be removed and the `field_1_w1` array can be initialised with some value in the subroutine. At this point the Kernel should compile successfully.

---



---

**Note:** Whilst there is only one field declared in the metadata there are 5 arguments to the Kernel. The first argument `nlayers` specifies the number of layers in a column for a field. The second argument is the array associated with the field. The field array is dimensioned as the number of unique degrees of freedom (`undf`) which is also passed into the kernel (the fourth argument). The naming convention is to call each field a `field`, followed by its position in the (algorithm) argument list (which is reflected in the metadata ordering). The third argument is the number of degrees of freedom for the particular column and is used to dimension the final argument which is the degrees of freedom map (`dofmap`) which indicates the location of the required values in the field array. The naming convention for the `dofmap`, `undf` and `ndf` is to append the name with the space that it is associated with.

---

We now take a look at a more complicated example. The metadata in this example is the same as an actual Dynamo kernel, however the subroutine content and various comments have been removed. The metadata specifies that there are four fields passed by the algorithm layer, the fourth of which is a vector field of size three. All three of the spaces require a basis function and the `w0` and `w2` function spaces additionally require a differential basis function. The content of the Kernel is given below.

```

module ru_kernel_mod
type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: ru_kernel_type
  private
  type(arg_type) :: meta_args(6) = (/
    arg_type(GH_FIELD,  GH_INC,  W2),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD,  GH_READ, W3),
    arg_type(GH_INTEGER, GH_READ),
    arg_type(GH_REAL,    GH_READ),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD,  GH_READ, W0),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_READ, W0)
  /)
  type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(3) = (/
    func_type(W2, GH_BASIS, GH_DIFF_BASIS),
    func_type(W3, GH_BASIS),
    func_type(W0, GH_BASIS, GH_DIFF_BASIS)
  /)
  integer :: iterates_over = CELLS
  integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
contains
  procedure, nopass :: ru_code
end type

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
contains
subroutine ru_code()
end subroutine ru_code
end module ru_kernel_mod
```

If we run the kernel stub generator on this example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/ru_kernel_mod.f90
```

we obtain the following output:

```
MODULE ru_mod
  IMPLICIT NONE
  CONTAINS
  SUBROUTINE ru_code(nlayers, field_1_w2, field_2_w3, iscalar_3, rscalar_4, field_5_
↪w0, field_6_w0_v1, field_6_w0_v2, field_6_w0_v3, ndf_w2, undf_w2, map_w2, basis_w2, ↪
↪diff_basis_w2, ndf_w3, undf_w3, map_w3, basis_w3, ndf_w0, undf_w0, map_w0, basis_w0,
↪ diff_basis_w0, np_xy, np_z, weights_xy, weights_z)
    USE constants_mod, ONLY: r_def
    IMPLICIT NONE
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: nlayers
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w2
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w2
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w0
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w0
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(inout), dimension(undf_w2) :: field_1_w2
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w3) :: field_2_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: iscalar_3
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in) :: rscalar_4
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_5_w0
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_6_w0_v1
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_6_w0_v2
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_6_w0_v3
    INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w2) :: map_w2
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(3,ndf_w2,np_xy,np_z) :: basis_w2
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(1,ndf_w2,np_xy,np_z) :: diff_basis_w2
    INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w3) :: map_w3
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(1,ndf_w3,np_xy,np_z) :: basis_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w0) :: map_w0
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(1,ndf_w0,np_xy,np_z) :: basis_w0
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(3,ndf_w0,np_xy,np_z) :: diff_basis_w0
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: np_xy, np_z
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(np_xy) :: weights_xy
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(np_z) :: weights_z
  END SUBROUTINE ru_code
END MODULE ru_mod
```

The above example demonstrates that the argument list can get quite complex. Rather than going through an explanation of each argument you are referred to Section [Rules](#) for more details on the rules for argument types and argument ordering. Regarding naming conventions for arguments you can see that the arrays associated with the fields are labelled as 1-6 depending on their position in the metadata. For a vector field, each vector results in a different array. These are distinguished by appending `_vx` where `x` is the number of the vector.

The introduction of stencil operations on field arguments further complicates the argument list of a kernel. An example

of the use of the stub generator for a kernel that performs stencil operations is provided in `examples/dynamo/eg5`.

```
> genkernelstub ../../examples/dynamo/eg5/conservative_flux_kernel_mod.F90
```

## 13.6 Errors

The stub generator has been written to provide useful errors if mistakes are found. If you run the generator and it does not produce a useful error - and in particular if it produces a stack trace - please contact the PSyclone developers.

The following tests do not produce stub kernel code either because they are invalid or because they contain functionality that is not supported in the stub generator.

```
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/matrix_vector_mod.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_any_space_1_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_any_space_4_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_invalid_fortran.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_short_name.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_no_datatype.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_qr.F90
```

`testkern_invalid_fortran.F90`, `testkern_no_datatype.F90`, `testkern_short_name.F90`, `testkern.F90` and `matrix_vector_mod.F90` are designed to be invalid for PSyclone testing purposes and should produce appropriate errors. For example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_invalid_fortran.F90
Error: 'Parse Error: Code appears to be invalid Fortran'
```

`any_space` is not currently supported in the stub generator so `testkern_any_space_1_mod.f90` and `testkern_any_space_4_mod.f90` should fail with appropriate warnings because of that. For example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_any_space_1_mod.f90
Error: "Generation Error: Unsupported space for basis function, expecting
one of ['w3', 'wtheta', 'w2v', 'w0', 'w1', 'w2', 'w2h', 'any_w2'] but
found 'any_space_1'"
```

As noted above, if the Dynamo0.3 naming convention for module and type names is not followed, the stub generator will return with an error message. For example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern.F90
Error: "Parse Error: Error, module name 'testkern' does not have
'__mod' as an extension. This convention is assumed."
```



## LINE LENGTH

By default PSyclone will generate fortran code with no consideration of fortran line length limits. As the line length limit for free-form fortran is 132 characters, the code that is output may be non-conformant.

Line length is not an issue for many compilers as they allow compiler flags to be set which allow lines longer than the fortran standard. However this is not the case for all compilers.

PSyclone therefore supports the wrapping of lines within the 132 character limit. The next two sections discuss how this is done when scripting and when working interactively respectively.

### 14.1 Script

The *psyclone* script provides the `-l` option to wrap lines. Please see the *Fortran line length* section for more details.

### 14.2 Interactive

When using PSyclone interactively the line lengths of the input algorithm and Kernel files can be checked by setting the `psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse()` function's "line\_length" argument to "True".

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> ast, info = parse("argspec.F90", line_length=True)
```

Similarly the "line\_length" argument can be set to "True" if calling the `generator.generate()` function. This function simply passes this argument on to the `psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse()` function.

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("argspec.F90", line_length=True)
```

Line wrapping is performed as a post processing step, i.e. after the code has been generated. This is done by an instance of the `line_length.FortLineLength` class. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> from psyclone.line_length import FortLineLength
>>> psy, alg = generate("argspec.f90", line_length=True)
>>> line_length = FortLineLength()
>>> psy_str = line_length.process(str(psy))
>>> print psy_str
>>> alg_str = line_length.process(str(alg))
>>> print alg_str
```

## 14.3 Limitations

The `line_length.FortLineLength` class is only partially aware of fortran syntax. This awareness is required so that appropriate continuation characters can be used (for example `&` at the end of a line and `!$omp&` at the start of a line for OpenMP directives, `&` at the end of a line for statements and `&` at the end of a line and `&` at the beginning of a line for strings).

Whilst statements only require an `&` at the end of the line when line wrapping with free-form fortran they may optionally also have an `&` at the beginning of the subsequent line. In contrast, when splitting a string over multiple lines an `&` is required at both locations. Therefore an instance of the `line_length.FortLineLength` class will always add `&` at the beginning of a continuation line for a statement, in case the line is split within a string.

One known situation that could cause an instance of the `line_length.FortLineLength` class to fail is when an inline comment is used at the end of a line to make it longer than the 132 character limit. Whilst PSyclone does not generate such code for the PSy-layer, this might occur in Algorithm-layer code, even if the Algorithm-layer code conforms to the 132 line length limit. The reason for this is that PSyclone's internal parser concatenates lines together, thus a long line correctly split with continuation characters in the Algorithm-layer becomes a line that needs to be split by an instance of the `line_length.FortLineLength` class.

## FORTRAN NAMING CONVENTIONS

There is a convention in the kernel code for the Dynamo0.3 and GOcean1.0 APIs that if the name of the operation being performed is `<name>` then a kernel file is `<name>_mod.[fF90]`, the name of the module inside the kernel file is `<name>_mod`, the name of the kernel metadata in the module is `<name>_type` and the name of the kernel subroutine in the module is `<name>_code`.

PSyclone itself does not rely on this convention apart from in the stub generator (see the *Stub Generation* Section) where the name of the metadata to be parsed is determined from the module name.



## 16.1 The generator module

This module provides the PSyclone ‘main’ routine which is intended to be driven from the bin/psyclone executable script. ‘main’ takes an algorithm file as input and produces modified algorithm code and generated PSy code. A function, ‘generate’, is also provided which has the same functionality as ‘main’ but can be called from within another Python program.

```
psyclone.generator.generate(filename, api="", kernel_path="", script_name=None,  
                           line_length=False, distributed_memory=None, kern_out_path="",  
                           kern_naming='multiple')
```

Takes a PSyclone algorithm specification as input and outputs the associated generated algorithm and psy codes suitable for compiling with the specified kernel(s) and support infrastructure. Uses the `parse.algorithm.parse()` function to parse the algorithm specification, the `psyGen.PSy` class to generate the PSy code and the `alg_gen.Alg` class to generate the modified algorithm code.

### Parameters

- **filename** (*str*) – The file containing the algorithm specification.
- **kernel\_path** (*str*) – The directory from which to recursively search for the files containing the kernel source (if different from the location of the algorithm specification).
- **script\_name** (*str*) – A script file that can apply optimisations to the PSy layer (can be a path to a file or a filename that relies on the PYTHONPATH to find the module).
- **line\_length** (*bool*) – A logical flag specifying whether we care about line lengths being longer than 132 characters. If so, the input (algorithm and kernel) code is checked to make sure that it conforms. The default is False.
- **distributed\_memory** (*bool*) – A logical flag specifying whether to generate distributed memory code. The default is set in the config.py file.
- **kern\_out\_path** (*str*) – Directory to which to write transformed kernel code.
- **kern\_naming** (*bool*) – the scheme to use when re-naming transformed kernels.

**Returns** 2-tuple containing fparser1 ASTs for the algorithm code and the psy code.

**Return type** (`fparser.one.block_statements.BeginSource`, `fparser.one.block_statements.Module`)

### Raises

- **IOError** – if the filename or search path do not exist
- **GenerationError** – if an invalid API is specified.
- **GenerationError** – if an invalid kernel-renaming scheme is specified.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", kernel_path="src/kernels")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", script_name="optimise.py")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", line_length=True)
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", distributed_memory=False)
```

## 16.2 The parse module

Module that uses the Fortran parser `fparser2` to parse PSyclone-conformant Algorithm code.

```
psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse(alg_filename, api="", invoke_name='invoke', kernel_path="",
                                line_length=False)
```

Takes a PSyclone conformant algorithm file as input and outputs a parse tree of the code contained therein and an object containing information about the 'invoke' calls in the algorithm file and any associated kernels within the invoke calls.

### Parameters

- **alg\_filename** (*str*) – The file containing the algorithm specification.
- **api** (*str*) – The PSyclone API to use when parsing the code.
- **invoke\_name** (*str*) – The expected name of the invocation calls in the algorithm code.
- **kernel\_path** (*str*) – The path to search for kernel source files (if different from the location of the algorithm source).
- **line\_length** (*bool*) – A logical flag specifying whether we care about line lengths being longer than 132 characters. If so, the input (algorithm and kernel) code is checked to make sure that it conforms and an error raised if not. The default is False.

**Returns** 2-tuple consisting of the `fparser2` parse tree of the Algorithm file and an object holding details of the invokes found.

**Return type** (`fparser.two.Fortran2003.Program`, `psyclone.parse.FileInfo`)

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> ast, info = parse("alg.f90")
```

## 16.3 The transformations module

This module provides the various transformations that can be applied to PSyIR nodes. There are both general and API-specific transformation classes in this module where the latter typically apply API-specific checks before calling the base class for the actual transformation.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCTrans`

Add an OpenACC data region around a list of nodes in the PSyIR. COPYIN, COPYOUT and COPY clauses are added as required.

For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCDataTrans
>>> dtrans = ACCDataTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Enclose the kernels
>>> new_sched, _ = dtrans.apply(kernels)

```

**apply** (*node\_list*)

Put the supplied list of nodes within an OpenACC data region.

**Parameters** *node\_list* (list of `psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – The list of PSyIR nodes to enclose in the data region.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation.

**Return type** `str`

`psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p`

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans`

Adds an OpenACC “enter data” directive to a Schedule. For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCEnterDataTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> newschedule.view()

```

**apply** (*sched*)

Adds an OpenACC “enter data” directive to the invoke associated with the supplied Schedule. Any fields accessed by OpenACC kernels within this schedule will be added to this data region in order to ensure they remain on the target device.

**Parameters** `sched` (sub-class of `psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`.) – Schedule to which to add an “enter data” directive.

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation.

**Return type** `str`

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans`

Enclose a sub-set of nodes from a Schedule within an OpenACC kernels region (i.e. within “!\$acc kernels” ... “!\$acc end kernels” directives).

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCKernelsTrans
>>> ktrans = ACCKernelsTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> new_sched, _ = ktrans.apply(kernels)
```

**apply** (*node\_list*, *default\_present=False*)

Enclose the supplied list of PSyIR nodes within an OpenACC Kernels region.

**Parameters**

- **node\_list** (list of `psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – The list of nodes in the PSyIR to enclose.
- **default\_present** (*bool*) – whether or not the kernels region should have the ‘default present’ attribute (indicating that data is already on the accelerator). When using managed memory this option should be False.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

`dynamo0p3 = <module 'psyclone.dynamo0p3' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone`

`name`

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

**Return type** `str`

`nemo = <module 'psyclone.nemo' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/psycl`

`psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p`



**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans`

Adds an OpenACC loop directive to a loop. This directive must be within the scope of some OpenACC Parallel region (at code-generation time).

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCParallelTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
# Apply the OpenACC Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
>>>     schedule = newschedule
>>>
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenACC
# PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
```

**apply** (*node*, *collapse=None*, *independent=True*, *sequential=False*)

Apply the ACCLoop transformation to the specified node. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to inserting a directive immediately before a loop, e.g.:

```
!$ACC LOOP
do ...
...
end do
```

At code-generation time (when `psyclone.psyGen.ACCLoopDirective.gen_code()` is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) a PARALLEL region.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – the supplied node to which we will apply the Loop transformation.
- **collapse** (*int*) – number of loops to collapse into single iteration space or None.
- **independent** (*bool*) – whether to add the “independent” clause to the directive (not strictly necessary within PARALLEL regions).

**Returns** (`psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans`

Create an OpenACC parallel region by inserting directives. This parallel region *must* come after an enter-data directive (see `ACCEnterDataTrans`) or within a data region (see `ACCDDataTrans`). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ptrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCParallelTrans')
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCDDataTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose everything within a single OpenACC PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = ptrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(newschedule)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

**name**

**Returns** The name of this transformation as a string.

**Return type** `str`

`psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p`

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans`

Transform a kernel subroutine by adding a “!\$acc routine” directive (causing it to be compiled for the OpenACC accelerator device). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCRoutineTrans
>>> rtrans = ACCRoutineTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kern = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> newkern, _ = rtrans.apply(kern)
```

**apply** (*kern*)

Modifies the AST of the supplied kernel so that it contains an “!\$acc routine” OpenACC directive.

**Parameters** **kern** (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern`) – The kernel object to transform.

**Returns** (transformed kernel, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if we fail to find the subroutine corresponding to the kernel object.

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

**Return type** `str`

**validate** (*kern*)

Perform checks that the supplied kernel can be transformed.

**Parameters** **kern** (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern`) – the kernel which is the target of the transformation.

**Raises**

- *TransformationError* – if the target kernel is a built-in.
- *TransformationError* – if any of the symbols in the kernel are accessed via a module use statement.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans`

Apply a colouring transformation to a loop (in order to permit a subsequent parallelisation over colours). For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = ColourTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
>>>
>>> csched.view()
```

**apply** (*node*)

Converts the Loop represented by *node* into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour.

**Parameters** **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – The loop to transform.

**Returns** Tuple of modified schedule and record of transformation

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `:py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans`

Splits a synchronous halo exchange into a halo exchange start and halo exchange end. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()

```

**apply** (*node*)

Transforms a synchronous halo exchange, represented by a HaloExchange node, into an asynchronous halo exchange, represented by HaloExchangeStart and HaloExchangeEnd nodes.

**Parameters** *node* (psyclone.psygen.HaloExchange) – A synchronous haloexchange node

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

**Return type** str

**class** psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTrans

Split a Dynamo 0.3 loop over cells into colours so that it can be parallelised. For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import transformations
>>> import os
>>> import pytest
>>>
>>> TEST_API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> _, info=parse(os.path.join(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__)),
>>>                             "tests", "test_files", "dynamo0p3",
>>>                             "4.6_multikernel_invokes.f90"),
>>>               api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = Dynamo0p3ColourTrans()
>>> otrans = DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
>>>
>>> # Then apply OpenMP to each of the colour loops
>>> schedule = cschedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newsched, _ = otrans.apply(child.children[0])
>>>
>>> newsched.view()

```

Colouring in the Dynamo 0.3 API is subject to the following rules:

- Only kernels with an iteration space of CELLS and which modify a continuous field require colouring. Any other type of loop will cause this transformation to raise an exception.
- A kernel may have at most one field with ‘INC’ access
- A separate colour map will be required for each field that is coloured (if an invoke contains >1 kernel call)

**apply** (*node*)

Performs Dynamo0.3-specific error checking and then uses the parent class to convert the Loop represented by *node* into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour.

**Parameters** *node* (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop`) – the loop to transform.

**Returns** 2-tuple of new schedule and memento of transform

**Return type** (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynInvokeSchedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans`

Modifies a kernel so that the number of dofs, number of layers and number of quadrature points are fixed in the kernel rather than being passed in by argument.

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans()
>>> for kernel in schedule.coded_kernels():
>>>     new_schedule, _ = trans.apply(kernel, number_of_layers=150)
>>>     kernel_schedule = kernel.get_kernel_schedule()
>>>     kernel_schedule.symbol_table.view()
```

**apply** (*node*, *cellshape*='quadrilateral', *element\_order*=None, *number\_of\_layers*=None, *quadrature*=False)

Transforms a kernel so that the values for the number of degrees of freedom (if a valid value for the *element\_order* arg is provided), the number of quadrature points (if the quadrature arg is set to True) and the number of layers (if a valid value for the *number\_of\_layers* arg is provided) are constant in a kernel rather than being passed in by argument.

The “cellshape”, “element\_order” and “number\_of\_layers” arguments are provided to mirror the namelist values that are input into an LFRic model when it is run.

Quadrature support is currently limited to XYoZ in this transformation. In the case of XYoZ the number of quadrature points (for horizontal and vertical) are set to the *element\_order* + 3 in the LFRic infrastructure so their value is derived.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.psygen.DynKern`) – a kernel node.
- **cellshape** (*str*) – the shape of the cells. This is provided as it helps determine the number of dofs a field has for a particular function space. Currently only “quadrilateral” is supported which is also the default value.

- **element\_order** (*int*) – the order of the cell. In combination with cellshape, this determines the number of dofs a field has for a particular function space. If it is set to None (the default) then the dofs values are not set as constants in the kernel, otherwise they are.
- **number\_of\_layers** (*int*) – the number of vertical layers in the LFRic model mesh used for this particular run. If this is set to None (the default) then the nlayers value is not set as a constant in the kernel, otherwise it is.
- **quadrature** (*bool*) – whether the number of quadrature points values are set as constants in the kernel (True) or not (False). The default is False.

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

**Return type** `str`

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3OMPLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

Dynamo 0.3 specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo-specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by *base class*.

**apply** (*node*, *reprod=None*)

Perform Dynamo 0.3 specific loop validity checks then call `OMPLoopTrans.apply()`.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the Node in the Schedule to check
- **reprod** (*bool or None (default, which indicates to use the default from the config file)*) – if reproducible reductions should be used.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if an OMP loop transform would create incorrect code.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans`

This transformation allows the user to modify a loop's bounds so that redundant computation will be performed. Redundant computation can result in halo exchanges being modified, new halo exchanges being added or existing halo exchanges being removed.

- This transformation should be performed before any parallelisation transformations (e.g. for OpenMP) to the loop in question and will raise an exception if this is not the case.
- This transformation can not be applied to a loop containing a reduction and will again raise an exception if this is the case.
- This transformation can only be used to add redundant computation to a loop, not to remove it.
- This transformation allows a loop that is already performing redundant computation to be modified, but only if the depth is increased.

**apply** (*loop*, *depth=None*)

Apply the redundant computation transformation to the loop `loop`. This transformation can be applied to loops iterating over 'cells' or 'dofs'. If `depth` is set to a value then the value will be the depth of the field's halo over which redundant computation will be performed. If `depth` is not set to a value then redundant computation will be performed to the full depth of the field's halo.

**Parameters**

- **loop** (`psyclone.psyGen.DynLoop`) – the loop that we are transforming
- **depth** (`int` or `None`) – the depth of the stencil. Defaults to `None` if a depth is not provided.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.DynamoExtractRegionTrans`

Dynamo0.3 API application of `ExtractRegionTrans` transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> FILENAME = "solver_alg.x90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import DynamoExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply DynamoExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0:3])
>>> newsched.view()
```

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans`

Performs error checking before calling the `apply()` method of the *base class* in order to fuse two Dynamo loops.

**apply** (*node1*, *node2*, *same\_space=False*)

Fuse the two Dynamo loops represented by *node1* and *node2*. The optional *same\_space* flag asserts that an unknown iteration space (i.e. *any\_space*) matches the other iteration space. This is set at the users own risk.

**Parameters**

- **node1** (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop`) – First Loop to fuse.
- **node2** (`psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop`) – Second Loop to fuse.

**Returns** two-tuple of modified Schedule and Memento

**Return type** `psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if either of the supplied loops contains an inter-grid kernel.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

Dynamo-specific OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by the *base class*.

**apply** (*node*)

Perform Dynamo specific loop validity checks then call the `apply()` method of the *base class*.

**Parameters** `node` (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the Node in the Schedule to check

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the associated loop requires colouring.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans`

Provides a transformation to extract code represented by a subset of the Nodes in the PSyIR of a Schedule into a stand-alone program. Examples are given in descriptions of children classes `DynamoExtractRegionTrans` and `GOceanExtractRegionTrans`.

After applying the transformation the Nodes marked for extraction are children of the `ExtractNode`. Nodes to extract can be individual constructs within an `Invoke` (e.g. Loops containing a `Kernel` or `BuiltIn` call) or entire `Invokes`. This functionality does not support distributed memory.

**apply** (`nodes`)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the Nodes within a Schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the Schedule within a single `Extract` region.

**Parameters** `nodes` ((list of) `psyclone.psyGen.Node`.) – a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Returns** tuple of the modified Schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`).

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the `nodes` argument is not of the correct type.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

```
psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p
```

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans`

Switch on (or off) the use of constant loop bounds within a `GOInvokeSchedule`. In the absence of constant loop bounds, PSyclone will generate loops where the bounds are obtained by de-referencing a field object, e.g.:

```
DO j = my_field%grid%internal%ystart, my_field%grid%internal%ystop
```

Some compilers are able to produce more efficient code if they are provided with information on the relative trip-counts of the loops within an `Invoke`. With constant loop bounds switched on, PSyclone generates code like:

```
ny = my_field%grid%subdomain%internal%ystop
...
DO j = 1, ny-1
```

In practice, the application of the constant loop bounds looks something like, e.g.:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import os
>>> TEST_API = "gocean1.0"
>>> _, info = parse(os.path.join("tests", "test_files", "gocean1p0",
>>>                               "single_invoke.f90"),
>>>                  api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_compute_cu')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOConstLoopBoundsTrans
```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

>>> clbtrans = GOConstLoopBoundsTrans()
>>>
>>> newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> # or, to turn off const. loop bounds:
>>> # newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule, const_bounds=False)
>>>
>>> newsched.view()

```

**apply** (*node*, *const\_bounds=True*)

Switches constant loop bounds on or off for all loops in a GOInvokeSchedule. Default is ‘on’.

#### Parameters

- **node** (`psyclone.gocean1p0.GOInvokeSchedule`) – The GOInvokeSchedule of which all loops will get the constant loop bounds switched on or off.
- **const\_bounds** (*bool*) – If the constant loop should be used (True) or not (False). Default is True.

#### name

Return the name of the Transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans`

Provides a loop-swap transformation, e.g.:

```

DO j=1, m
  DO i=1, n

```

becomes:

```

DO i=1, n
  DO j=1, m

```

This transform is used as follows:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("shallow_alg.f90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("gocean1.0").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOLoopSwapTrans
>>> swap = GOLoopSwapTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = swap.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()

```

**apply** (*outer*)

The argument *outer* must be a loop which has exactly one inner loop. This transform then swaps the outer and inner loop.

**Parameters** **outer** (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – The node representing the outer loop.

**Returns** A tuple consisting of the new schedule, and a Memento.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the supplied node does not allow a loop swap to be done.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanExtractRegionTrans`

GOcean1.0 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "gocean1.0"
>>> FILENAME = "shallow_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOceanExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = GOceanExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply GOceanExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> newsched.view()
```

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans`

Performs error checking (that the loops are over the same grid-point type) before calling the `LoopFuseTrans.apply()` method of the *base class* in order to fuse two GOcean loops.

**apply** (*node1*, *node2*)

Fuse the two GOcean loops represented by *node1* and *node2*.

**Parameters**

- **node1** (`psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop`) – A node representing a GOLoop.
- **node2** (`psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop`) – A node representing a GOLoop.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied *node2* can not be fused, e.g. not all nodes are loops, don't have the same parent, are not next to each other or have different iteration spaces.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule*='static')

GOcean-specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that the node is either an inner or outer Loop). Actual transformation is done by *base class*.

**Parameters** *omp\_schedule* – The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of 'runtime', 'static', 'dynamic', 'guided' or 'auto'.

**apply** (*node*)

Perform GOcean specific loop validity checks then call `OMPLoopTrans.apply()`.

**Parameters** *node* (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – The loop to parallelise using OMP Do.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule*='static')

GOcean specific OpenMP Do loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that supplied Loop is an inner or outer loop). Actual transformation is done by *base class*.

**Parameters** `omp_schedule` – The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of ‘runtime’, ‘static’, ‘dynamic’, ‘guided’ or ‘auto’.

**apply** (*node*)

Perform GOcean-specific loop validity checks then call `OMPParallelLoopTrans.apply()`.

**Parameters** `node` (`psyclone.psyGen.Loop`) – A Loop node from an AST.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the supplied node is not an inner or outer loop.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans`

Switches on, or switches off, the inlining of a Kernel subroutine into the PSy layer module. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> inline_trans = KernelModuleInlineTrans()
>>>
>>> ischedule, _ = inline_trans.apply(schedule.children[0].loop_body[0])
>>> ischedule.view()
```

**Warning:** For this transformation to work correctly, the Kernel subroutine must only use data that is passed in by argument, declared locally or included via use association within the subroutine. Two examples where in-lining will not work are:

1. A variable is declared within the module that contains the Kernel subroutine and is then accessed within that Kernel;
2. A variable is included via use association at the module level and accessed within the Kernel subroutine.

The transformation will reject attempts to in-line such kernels.

**apply** (*node*, *inline=True*)

Checks that the node is of the correct type (a Kernel) then marks the Kernel to be inlined, or not, depending on the value of the inline argument. If the inline argument is not passed the Kernel is marked to be inlined.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**validate** (*node*, *inline*)

Check that the supplied kernel is eligible to be module inlined.

**Parameters**

- **node** (sub-class of `psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the node in the PSyIR that is to be module inlined.
- **inline** (*bool*) – whether or not the kernel is to be inlined.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the supplied kernel has itself been transformed (Issue #229).

**class** `psyclone.transformations.KernelTrans`

Base class for all Kernel transformations.

**static validate** (*kern*)

Checks that the supplied node is a Kernel and that it is possible to construct the PSyIR of its contents.

**Parameters** **kern** (`psyclone.psyGen.Kern` or sub-class.) – the kernel which is the target of the transformation.

**Raises**

- ***TransformationError*** – if the target node is not a sub-class of `psyGen.Kern`.
- ***TransformationError*** – if the subroutine containing the implementation of the kernel cannot be found in the `fparser2` Parse Tree.
- ***TransformationError*** – if the PSyIR cannot be constructed because there are symbols of unknown type.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans`

Provides a loop-fuse transformation. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo=parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy=PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import LoopFuseTrans
>>> trans=LoopFuseTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento=trans.apply(schedule.children[0],
>>>                                   schedule.children[1])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

**apply** (*node1*, *node2*)

Fuse the loops represented by *node1* and *node2*.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans`

Provides a transformation to move a node in the tree. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo=parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy=PSyFactory("dynamo0.3").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import MoveTrans
>>> trans=MoveTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0],
>>>                                   schedule.children[2],
>>>                                   position="after")
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

Nodes may only be moved to a new location with the same parent and must not break any dependencies otherwise an exception is raised.

**apply** (*node*, *location*, *position='before'*)

Move the node represented by *node* before *location* (which is also a node) by default and after if the optional *position* argument is set to 'after'. An exception is raised if the move is invalid.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans`

Transforms the outermost array slice in an implicit loop in a NEMOInvokeSchedule into an explicit loop. For example, if “implicit\_loop.f90” contained:

```
my_array(:, :, :) = 1.0
```

then doing:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "nemo"
>>> filename = "implicit_loop.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import NemoExplicitLoopTrans
>>> rtrans = NemoExplicitLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> loop = schedule.children[0]
>>> newloop, _ = rtrans.apply(loop)
```

will create a new NemoLoop object for an explicit loop over levels (the outermost slice) that then contains an implicit loop:

```
DO jk = 1, jpk
  my_array(:, :, jk) = 1.0
END DO
```

Subsequently applying `rtrans` to `newloop` will create:

```
DO jk = 1, jpk
  DO jj = 1, jpj
    my_array(:, jj, jk) = 1.0
  END DO
END DO
```

**apply** (*loop*)

Transform the outermost array slice in the supplied implicit loop into an explicit loop.

**Parameters** **loop** (`psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop`) – the `NemoImplicitLoop` to transform.

**Returns** a new PSyIR loop object and a memento of the transformation.

**Return type** (`psyclone.nemo.NemoLoop`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**Raises**

- **NotImplementedError** – if the array slice has explicit bounds.
- **TransformationError** – if an array slice is not in dimensions 1-3 of the array.

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

**Return type** `str`

**validate** (*loop*)

Check that the supplied loop is a valid target for this transformation.

**Parameters** `loop` (`psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop`) – the loop node to validate.

**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the supplied loop is not a `NemoImplicitLoop`.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans`

Switches on/off the generation of an OpenCL PSy layer for a given `InvokeSchedule`. Additionally, it will generate OpenCL kernels for each of the kernels referenced by the `Invoke`. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ocl_trans = OCLTrans()
>>> new_sched, _ = ocl_trans.apply(schedule)
```

**apply** (`sched`, `opencl=True`)

Apply the OpenCL transformation to the supplied `GOInvokeSchedule`. This causes PSyclone to generate an OpenCL version of the corresponding PSy-layer routine. The generated code makes use of the FortCL library (<https://github.com/stfc/FortCL>) in order to manage the OpenCL device directly from Fortran.

**Parameters**

- **sched** (`psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule`) – `InvokeSchedule` to transform.
- **opencl** (`bool`) – whether or not to enable OpenCL generation.

**name**

**Returns** the name of this transformation.

**Return type** `str`

**validate** (`sched`)

Checks that the supplied `Schedule` is valid and that an OpenCL version of it can be generated.

**Parameters** **sched** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`) – `Schedule` to check.

**Raises**

- `TransformationError` – if the `Schedule` is not for the GOcean1.0 API.
- `NotImplementedError` – if any of the kernels have arguments passed by value.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans` (`omp_schedule='static'`)

Adds an orphaned OpenMP directive to a loop. i.e. the directive must be inside the scope of some other OpenMP Parallel REGION. This condition is tested at code-generation time. The optional 'reprod' argument in the `apply` method decides whether standard OpenMP reduction support is to be used (which is not reproducible) or whether a manual reproducible reproduction is to be used.

**Parameters** **omp\_schedule** (`str`) – The OpenMP schedule to use.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> print psy.invokes.names
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
# Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
>>>     schedule = newschedule
>>>
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
# PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
>>>

```

**apply** (*node*, *reprod=None*)

Apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation to the specified node in a Schedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to wrapping the generated code with directives like so:

```

!$OMP DO
do ...
...
end do
!$OMP END DO

```

At code-generation time (when `OMPLoopDirective.gen_code()` is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) an OpenMP PARALLEL region.

The optional *reprod* argument will cause a reproducible reduction to be generated if it is set to `True`, otherwise the default value (as read from the `psyclone.cfg` file) will be used. Note, reproducible in this case means obtaining the same results with the same number of OpenMP threads, not for different numbers of OpenMP threads.

#### Parameters

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`) – the supplied node to which we will apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation
- **reprod** (*Boolean or None*) – optional argument to determine whether to generate reproducible OpenMP reductions (`True`) or not (`False`). The default value is `None` which will cause PSyclone to look up a default value

**Returns** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

#### omp\_schedule

Returns the OpenMP schedule that will be specified by this transformation. The default schedule is 'static'.

**class** `psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelLoopTrans` (*omp\_schedule='static'*)

Adds an OpenMP PARALLEL DO directive to a loop.

For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import OMPParallelLoopTrans
>>> trans = OMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()

```

**apply (node)**

Apply an OMPParallelLoop Transformation to the supplied node (which must be a Loop). In the generated code this corresponds to wrapping the Loop with directives:

```

!$OMP PARALLEL DO ...
do ...
...
end do
!$OMP END PARALLEL DO

```

**Parameters** **node** (psyclone.f2pygen.DoGen) – the node (loop) to which to apply the transformation.

**Returns** Two-tuple of transformed schedule and a record of the transformation.

**Return type** (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, :py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**class psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans**

Create an OpenMP PARALLEL region by inserting directives. For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('GOceanOMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
>>> # Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
>>> # in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>     newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child)

```

(continues on next page)



(continued from previous page)

```

>>>     schedule = newschedule
>>>
>>> # Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
>>> # PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()

```

**name****Returns** The name of this transformation as a string.**Return type** `str`

```
psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p
```

**class** `psyclone.transformations.ParallelLoopTrans`

Adds an orphaned directive to a loop indicating that it should be parallelised. i.e. the directive must be inside the scope of some other Parallel REGION. This condition is tested at code-generation time.

**apply** (*node*, *collapse=None*)

Apply the Loop transformation to the specified node in a Schedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to wrapping the generated code with directives, e.g. for OpenMP:

```

!$OMP DO
do ...
...
end do
!$OMP END DO

```

At code-generation time (when `gen_code()` is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) a PARALLEL region.

**Parameters**

- **node** (`psyclone.psyGen.Node`.) – the supplied node to which we will apply the Loop transformation.
- **collapse** (*int*) – number of loops to collapse into single iteration space or None.

**Returns** (`psyclone.psyGen.Schedule`, `psyclone.undoredo.Memento`)**name****Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.**Return type** `str`**class** `psyclone.transformations.ParallelRegionTrans`

Base class for transformations that create a parallel region.

**apply** (*nodes*)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Loops in the schedule within a single parallel region.

**Parameters** **nodes** ((list of) `psyclone.psyGen.Node`.) – a single Node or a list of Nodes.**Raises** `TransformationError` – if the nodes argument is not of the correct type.**name****Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.**class** `psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans`

Create a profile region around a list of statements. For example:

```

>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> p_trans = t.get_trans_name('ProfileRegionTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose all children within a single profile region
>>> newschedule, _ = p_trans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()

```

**apply** (*nodes*)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the schedule within a single profiler region.

**Parameters** *nodes* (psyclone.psygen.Node or list of psyclone.psygen.Node) – can be a single node or a list of nodes.

**name**

Returns the name of this transformation as a string

**profiler** = <module 'psyclone.profiler' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/profiler.py'>

**psyGen** = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/psyGen.py'>

**class** psyclone.transformations.RegionTrans

This abstract class is a base class for all transformations that act on a list of nodes. It gives access to a `_validate` function that makes sure that the nodes in the list are in the same order as in the original AST, no node is duplicated, and that all nodes have the same parent. We also check that all nodes to be enclosed are valid for this transformation - this requires that the sub-class populate the *valid\_node\_types* tuple.

**exception** psyclone.transformations.TransformationError (*value*)

Provides a PSyclone-specific error class for errors found during code transformation operations.

**psyclone.transformations.check\_intergrid** (*node*)

Utility function to check that the supplied node does not have an intergrid kernel amongst its descendants.

This is used ensure any attempt to apply loop-fusion and redundant- computation transformations to loops containing inter-grid kernels is rejected (since support for those is not yet implemented).

**Parameters** *node* (psyGen.Node) – The PSyIR node to check.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node has an inter-grid kernel as a descendant.

## 16.4 The psyGen module

This module provides generic support for PSyclone's PSy code optimisation and generation. The classes in this method need to be specialised for a particular API and implementation.

**class** psyclone.psyGen.PSy (*invoke\_info*)

Base class to help manage and generate PSy code for a single algorithm file. Takes the invocation information

output from the function `parse.algorithm.parse()` as its input and stores this in a way suitable for optimisation and code generation.

**Parameters** `invoke_info` (`psyclone.parse.algorithm.FileInfo`) – An object containing the required invocation information for code optimisation and generation. Produced by the function `parse.algorithm.parse()`.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> ast, info = parse("argspec.F90")
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "...
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(info)
>>> print(psy.gen)
```

**gen**

Abstract base class for code generation function. :param parent: the parent of this Node in the PSyIR.  
:type parent: `psyclone.psyGen.Node`.

**inline** (*module*)

inline all kernel subroutines into the module that are marked for inlining. Avoid inlining the same kernel more than once.

## 16.5 The alg\_gen module

This module provides the Alg class and supporting exception-handling to translate the original algorithm file into one that can be compiled and linked with the generated PSy code.

**class** `psyclone.alg_gen.Alg` (*parse\_tree*, *psy*, *invoke\_name*='invoke')

Generate a modified algorithm code for a single algorithm specification. Takes the parse tree of the algorithm specification output from the function `psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse()` and an instance of the `psyGen.PSy` class as input. The latter allows consistent names to be generated between the algorithm (calling) and psy (callee) layers.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.algorithm.parse import parse
>>> parse_tree, info = parse("argspec.F90")
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSy
>>> psy = PSy(info)
>>> from psyclone.alg_gen import Alg
>>> alg = Alg(parse_tree, psy)
>>> print(alg.gen)
```

**Parameters**

- **parse\_tree** (`fparser.two.utils.Base`) – An object containing a parse tree of the algorithm specification which was produced by the function `psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse()`. Assumes the algorithm will be parsed by `fparser2` and expects a valid program unit, program, module, subroutine or function.
- **psy** (`psyclone.psyGen.PSy`) – An object containing information about the PSy layer.
- **invoke\_name** (*str*) – The name that the algorithm layer uses to indicate an invoke call. This is an optional argument that defaults to the name “invoke”.

**gen**

Return modified algorithm code.

**Returns** The modified algorithm specification as an `fparser2` parse tree.

**Return type** `fparser.two.utils.Base`

## 16.6 The `line_length` module

Provides support for breaking long fortran lines into smaller ones to allow the code to conform to the maximum line length limits (132 for f90 free format is the default)

**class** `psyclone.line_length.FortLineLength` (*line\_length=132*)

This class take a free format fortran code as a string and line wraps any lines that are larger than the specified line length

**length**

returns the maximum allowed line length

**long\_lines** (*fortran\_in*)

returns true if at least one of the lines in the input code is longer than the allowed length. Otherwise returns false

**process** (*fortran\_in*)

takes fortran code as a string as input and output fortran code as a string with any long lines wrapped appropriately

## PROFILING

PSyclone has the ability to define regions that can be profiled with various performance measurement tools. The profiling can be enabled automatically using command line parameters like:

```
psyclone --profile kernels ...
```

Or more fine grained by applying a profiling transformation in a transformation script.

PSyclone can be used with a variety of existing profiling tools. It currently supports `dl_timer`, `Dr Hook`, and comes with a simple stand-alone timer library. An application needs to be able to find the module files for the profile wrapper, and needs to be linked with the included wrapper library that interfaces between the PSyclone API and the tool-specific API. It is the responsibility of the user to supply the corresponding compiler command line options when building the application that incorporates the PSyclone-generated code.

### 17.1 Profiling API

In order to be used with different profiling tools, PSyclone supports a simple profiling API. For each existing profiling tool a simple interface library needs to be implemented that maps the PSyclone profiling calls to the corresponding call for the profiling tool.

PSyclone utilises 4 profiling calls which are described in the following sub-sections.

#### 17.1.1 ProfileInit()

This method needs to be called once to initialise the profiling tool. At this stage this call is not automatically inserted by PSyclone, so it is the responsibility of the user to add the call to an appropriate location in the application:

```
use profile_mod, only : ProfileInit
...
call ProfileInit()
```

The ‘appropriate’ location might depend on the profiling library used. For example, it might be necessary to invoke this before or after a call to `MPI_Init()`.

#### 17.1.2 ProfileFinalise()

At the end of the program the function `ProfileFinalise()` must be called. It will make sure that the measurements are printed or written to file correctly, and that the profiling tool is closed correctly. Again at this stage it is necessary to manually insert the call at an appropriate location:

```
use profile_mod, only : ProfileFinalise
...
call ProfileFinalise()
```

And again the appropriate location might depend on the profiling library used (e.g. before or after a call to `MPI_Finalize()`).

### 17.1.3 ProfileStart()/ProfileEnd()

The `ProfileStart` and `ProfileEnd` functions define the beginning and end of a region to be measured. In general it is up to the user what exactly a region is, arbitrary code can be enclosed, as long as it is guaranteed that each call of `ProfileStart` is matched with exactly one corresponding call to `ProfileEnd`. PSyclone supplies one saved (static) variable of type `ProfileData` to each matching Start/End pair.

This is the code sequence which is created by PSyclone:

```
use profile_mod, only : ProfileData, ProfileStart, ProfileEnd
...
type(ProfileData), save :: profiler_data
...
call ProfileStart("Module", "Region", profiler_data)
...
call ProfileEnd(profiler_data)
```

PSyclone guarantees that different `ProfileStart/End` pairs have different `ProfileData` variables.

## 17.2 Profiling Command Line Options

PSyclone offers two command line options to automatically instrument code with profiling regions. It can create profile regions around a full invoke (including all kernel calls in this invoke), and/or around each individual kernel.

The option `--profile` invokes will automatically add a call to `ProfileStart` and `ProfileEnd` at the beginning and end of every invoke subroutine created by PSyclone. All kernels called within this invoke subroutine will be included in the profiled region.

The option `--profile kernels` will add a call to `ProfileStart` before any loops created by PSyclone, and a `ProfileEnd` call at the end of the loop. Two caveats:

1. In some APIs (for example dynamo when using distributed memory) additional minor code might get included in a profiled kernel section, for example `setDirty()` calls (expensive calls like `HaloExchange` are excluded).
2. If loop transforms are applied using a script, the profiling nodes added to the PSyIR will very likely cause errors in the script or in the generated output. As an example consider a case where an `OMPLoop` transform is applied to a loop. With profiling enabled instead of the expected loop there could be a profile node in the PSyIR (with the loop as child). Since an `OMP DO` directive can only have loops inside, and it now has a call to `ProfileStart`, the generated code is incorrect and will not compile.

In order to avoid the second issue, automatic profiling using `--profile` is not allowed together with a transformation script. On the other hand, since it is possible to write scripts that are more flexible in handling a modified PSyIR, you can use the command line option `--force-profile`. It takes the same parameters as `--profile`, and will allow you to combine a transformation script together with automatic profiling. Use this option at your own risk!

It is also the responsibility of the user to manually add the calls to `ProfileInit` and `ProfileFinalise` to the code base.

PSyclone will modify the schedule of each invoke to insert the profiling regions. Below we show an example of a schedule created when instrumenting invokes - all children of a Profile-Node will be part of the profiling region, including all loops created by PSyclone and all kernel calls:

```
GOInvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_1',Constant loop bounds=True]
  [Profile]
    Loop[type='outer',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
      Loop[type='inner',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
        CodedKern compute_unew_code(unew_fld,uold_fld,z_fld,cv_fld,h_fld,tdt,
↳dy) [module_inline=False]
      Loop[type='outer',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
        Loop[type='inner',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
          CodedKern compute_vnew_code(vnew_fld,vold_fld,z_fld,cu_fld,h_fld,tdt,
↳dy) [module_inline=False]
      Loop[type='outer',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
        Loop[type='inner',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
          CodedKern compute_pnew_code(pnew_fld,pold_fld,cu_fld,cv_fld,tdt,dx,
↳dy) [module_inline=False]
```

And now the same schedule when instrumenting kernels. In this case each loop nest and kernel call will be contained in a separate region:

```
GOInvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_1',Constant loop bounds=True]
  [Profile]
    Loop[type='outer',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
      Loop[type='inner',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
        CodedKern compute_unew_code(unew_fld,uold_fld,z_fld,cv_fld,h_fld,tdt,
↳dy) [module_inline=False]
  [Profile]
    Loop[type='outer',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
      Loop[type='inner',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
        CodedKern compute_vnew_code(vnew_fld,vold_fld,z_fld,cu_fld,h_fld,tdt,
↳dy) [module_inline=False]
  [Profile]
    Loop[type='outer',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
      Loop[type='inner',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
        CodedKern compute_pnew_code(pnew_fld,pold_fld,cu_fld,cv_fld,tdt,dx,
↳dy) [module_inline=False]
```

Both options can be specified at the same time:

```
GOInvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_1',Constant loop bounds=True]
  [Profile]
    [Profile]
      Loop[type='outer',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
        Loop[type='inner',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
          CodedKern compute_unew_code(unew_fld,uold_fld,z_fld,cv_fld,h_fld,
↳tdt,dy) [module_inline=False]
    [Profile]
      Loop[type='outer',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
        Loop[type='inner',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
          CodedKern compute_vnew_code(vnew_fld,vold_fld,z_fld,cu_fld,h_fld,
↳tdt,dy) [module_inline=False]
    [Profile]
      Loop[type='outer',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
        Loop[type='inner',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
          CodedKern compute_pnew_code(pnew_fld,pold_fld,cu_fld,cv_fld,tdt,
↳dx,dy) [module_inline=False]
```

## 17.3 Profiling in Scripts - ProfileRegionTransform

The greatest flexibility is achieved by using the profiler transformation explicitly in a transformation script. The script takes either a single PSyIR Node or a list of PSyIR Nodes as argument, and will insert a Profile Node into the PSyIR, with the specified nodes as children. At code creation time the listed children will all be enclosed in one profile region. As an example:

```
from psyclone.transformations import ProfileRegionTrans

t=TransInfo()
p_trans= ProfileRegionTrans()
schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
schedule.view()

# Enclose all children within a single profile region
newschedule, _ = p_trans.apply(schedule.children[1:3])
newschedule.view()
```

**Warning:** It is the responsibility of the user to make sure that a profile region is only created inside a multi-threaded region if the profiling library used is thread-safe!

## 17.4 Interface to Third Party Profiling Tools

PSyclone comes with wrapper libraries to support usage of Dr Hook, dl\_timer, NVTX (NVIDIA Tools Extension library), and a simple non-thread-safe timing library. Support for further profiling libraries will be added in the future. To compile the wrapper libraries, change into the directory `lib/profiling` of PSyclone and type `make` to compile all wrappers. If only some of the wrappers are required, you can either use `make wrapper-name` (e.g. `make drhook`), or change into the corresponding directory and use `make`. The corresponding README files contain additional parameters that can be set in order to find third party profiling tools.

Any user can create similar wrapper libraries for other profiling tools by providing a corresponding Fortran module. The four profiling calls described in the section about the [ProfilingAPI](#) must be implemented, and an opaque, user-defined type `ProfileData` needs to be provided in the module.

Note that the `ProfileEnd` call does not have the module or region name as an argument. If this is required by the profiling library, this data must be stored in the `ProfileData` object so that it is available in the `ProfileEnd` call.

The examples in the `lib/profiling` directory show various ways in which the opaque data type can be used to interface with existing profiling tools - for example by storing an index used by the profiling tool in `ProfileData`, or by storing pointers to the profiling data to be able to print all results in a `ProfileFinalise()` subroutine.



## PSY KERNEL EXTRACTOR (PSYKE)

### 18.1 Introduction

PSyclone has the ability to define regions of a PSyclone-conformant code to be extracted and run as a stand-alone application. This ability, called PSyKE (PSy Kernel Extractor), can be useful for benchmarking parts of a model, such as LFRic, without the need for using its infrastructure.

#### 18.1.1 Mechanism

The code marked for extraction can be (subject to *Restrictions*):

- One or more Nodes in an Invoke (e.g. Loops containing Kernel or Built-In calls, a Directive enclosing one or more Loops) or
- The entire Invoke (extraction applied to all Nodes).

The basic mechanism of code extraction is through applying the **ExtractRegionTrans** transformation to selected Nodes. This transformation is further sub-classed into API-specific implementations, **DynamoExtractRegionTrans** and **GOceanExtractRegionTrans**. Both sub-classed transformations insert an instance of the **ExtractNode** object into the Schedule of a specific Invoke. All Nodes marked for extraction become children of the **ExtractNode**.

For now, the **ExtractNode** class simply adds comments at the beginning and the end of the extract region, that is at the position of the extract Node and after all its children. For example, marking a single Loop containing a Kernel call in Dynamo0.3 API generates:

```
! ExtractStart
! CALL write_extract_arguments(argument_list)
!
DO cell=1,f3_proxy%vspace%get_ncell()
!
  CALL testkern_code_w2_only(nlayers, f3_proxy%data, f2_proxy%data, ...)
END DO
!
! ExtractEnd
```

The `! CALL write_extract_arguments(argument_list)` comment will be replaced by appropriate calls to write out arguments of extracted Node(s) or Kernel(s) in Issue #234. The **ExtractNode** base class can be sub-classed by API-specific code. This will be required for constructing the list of quantities required by Kernel (and Built-In) calls in the extracted Nodes.

### 18.1.2 Restrictions

Code extraction can be applied to unoptimised or optimised code. There are restrictions that check for correctness of optimising transformations when extraction is applied, as well as restrictions that eliminate dependence on the specific model infrastructure.

#### General

This group of restrictions is enforced irrespective of whether optimisations are used or not.

- Extraction can be applied to a single Node or a list of Nodes in a Schedule. For the latter, Nodes in the list must be consecutive children of the same parent Schedule.
- Extraction cannot be applied to an **ExtractNode** or a Node list that already contains one (otherwise we would have an extract region within another extract region).
- A Kernel or a Built-In call cannot be extracted without its parent Loop.

#### Distributed memory

As noted in the *Distributed Memory* section, support for distributed memory in PSyclone is currently limited to the Dynamo0.3 API. Since the implementation generates calls to LFRic infrastructure (e.g. runtime checks for status of field halos), code extraction is not allowed when distributed memory is enabled.

#### Shared memory and API-specific

The **ExtractRegionTrans** transformation cannot be applied to:

- A Loop without its parent Directive,
- An orphaned Directive (e.g. **OMPDirective**, **ACCLoopDirective**) without its parent Directive (e.g. ACC or OMP Parallel Directive),
- A Loop over cells in a colour without its parent Loop over colours in the Dynamo0.3 API,
- An inner Loop without its parent outer Loop in the GOcean1.0 API.

## 18.2 Use

The code extraction is currently enabled by utilising a transformation script (see *Script* section for more details).

For example, the transformation script which extracts the first Kernel call in Dynamo0.3 API test example 15.1.2\_builtin\_and\_normal\_kernel\_invoke.f90 would be written as:

```
from psyclone.transformations import DynamoExtractRegionTrans

# Get instance of the ExtractRegionTrans transformation
etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()

# Get Invoke and its Schedule
invoke = psy.invokes.get("invoke_0")
schedule = invoke.schedule

# Apply extract transformation to the selected Node
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
schedule, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[2])
schedule.view()
```

and called as:

```
> psyclone -nodm -s ./extract_single_node.py \
  <path-to-example>/15.1.2_builtin_and_normal_kernel_invoke.f90
```

PSyclone modifies the Schedule of the selected `invoke_0`:

```
Schedule[invoke='invoke_0' dm=False]
  Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']
    BuiltIn setval_c(f5,0.0)
  Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']
    BuiltIn setval_c(f2,0.0)
  Loop[type='',field_space='w2',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
    CodedKern testkern_code_w2_only(f3,f2) [module_inline=False]
  Loop[type='',field_space='wtheta',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
    CodedKern testkern_wtheta_code(f4,f5) [module_inline=False]
  Loop[type='',field_space='w1',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
    CodedKern testkern_code(scalar,f1,f2,f3,f4) [module_inline=False]
```

to insert the extract region. As shown below, all children of an **ExtractNode** will be part of the region:

```
Schedule[invoke='invoke_0' dm=False]
  Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']
    BuiltIn setval_c(f5,0.0)
  Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']
    BuiltIn setval_c(f2,0.0)
  Extract
    Loop[type='',field_space='w2',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
      CodedKern testkern_code_w2_only(f3,f2) [module_inline=False]
    Loop[type='',field_space='wtheta',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
      CodedKern testkern_wtheta_code(f4,f5) [module_inline=False]
    Loop[type='',field_space='w1',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
      CodedKern testkern_code(scalar,f1,f2,f3,f4) [module_inline=False]
```

To extract multiple Nodes, **ExtractRegionTrans** can be applied to the list of Nodes (subject to *General* restrictions above):

```
# Apply extract transformation to the selected Nodes
schedule, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[1:3])
```

This modifies the above Schedule as:

```
...
  Extract
    Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs'
↪']
      BuiltIn setval_c(f2,0.0)
    Loop[type='',field_space='w2',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']
      CodedKern testkern_code_w2_only(f3,f2) [module_inline=False]
...
```

As said above, extraction can be performed on optimised code. For example, the following example transformation script first adds `!$OMP PARALLEL DO` directive and then extracts the optimised code in Dynamo0.3 API test example `15.1.2_builtin_and_normal_kernel_invoke.f90`:

```
from psyclone.transformations import DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans, \
    DynamoExtractRegionTrans

# Get instances of the transformations
etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()
otrans = DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans()

# Get Invoke and its Schedule
invoke = psy.invokes.get("invoke_0")
schedule = invoke.schedule

# Add OMP PARALLEL DO directives
schedule, _ = otrans.apply(schedule.children[1])
schedule, _ = otrans.apply(schedule.children[2])
# Apply extract transformation to the selected Nodes
schedule, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[1:3])
schedule.view()
```

The generated code is now:

```
! ExtractStart
! CALL write_extract_arguments(argument_list)
!
!$omp parallel do default(shared), private(df), schedule(static)
DO df=1, undf_any_space_1_f2
    f2_proxy%data(df) = 0.0
END DO
!$omp end parallel do
!$omp parallel do default(shared), private(cell), schedule(static)
DO cell=1, f3_proxy%vspace%get_ncell()
    !
    CALL testkern_code_w2_only(nlayers, f3_proxy%data, f2_proxy%data, ndf_w2, undf_w2,
↪map_w2(:, cell))
END DO
!$omp end parallel do
!
! ExtractEnd
```

Examples in `examples/dynamo/eg12` directory demonstrate how to apply code extraction by utilising PSyclone transformation scripts (see [Examples](#) section for more information).

## SYSTEM-SPECIFIC SET-UP FOR USERS

This chapter describes the setup for a user of PSyclone. It includes all steps necessary to be able to use PSyclone. And while you could obviously do some development, none of the required tools for testing or documentation creation will be installed.

The [System-specific Developer Set-up](#) in the Developers' Guide describes the additional installation of all required tools to run tests and create documentation.

Detailed instructions are provided for Ubuntu 16.04.2 and OpenSUSE 42.2 - if you are working with a different Linux distribution some adjustments will be necessary. You will need a terminal window open in which to enter the commands.

### 19.1 Installing dependencies

Most required dependencies are installed from the Python Package Index (<https://packaging.python.org/installing/>) using the program `pip` ("PIP Installs Packages"). Besides `pip` it is also recommended to install the `graphviz` package to be able to visualise dependency graphs. This is optional and the associated routine will silently return if the `graphviz` bindings are not installed.

#### 19.1.1 Installing dependencies on Ubuntu

On Ubuntu `pip` and `graphviz` are installed using `apt-get`. Remember that `graphviz` is optional and that you'll need to install the `graphviz` package in addition to the Python bindings.

```
> sudo apt-get install python-pip graphviz
```

#### 19.1.2 Installing dependencies on OpenSUSE

The vanilla OpenSUSE installation includes `pip` for Python 3. Note that the `graphviz` package is installed by default.

```
> sudo zypper install python-pip
```

### 19.2 Installing PSyclone

Change your working directory to where you would like to place the code and download the latest stable release of PSyclone.

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>
> wget https://github.com/stfc/PSyclone/archive/1.7.0.tar.gz
> gunzip 1.7.0.tar.gz
> tar xf 1.7.0.tar
> rm 1.7.0.tar
> cd PSyclone-1.7.0
> export PYTHONPATH=`pwd`/src:${PYTHONPATH}
> export PATH=`pwd`/bin:${PATH}
```

This sets up your python path and path appropriately. You may want to set these paths permanently (e.g. by editing your `${HOME}/.bashrc` file if you run the BASH shell). You can also use the latest version using git, as described in [Installing PSyclone From GitHub](#).

## 19.3 Common installation

To avoid warnings during the dependency installation, it is recommended to update `pip` to the latest version:

```
> sudo pip install --upgrade pip
```

Next you need to install the `fparser` and `pyparsing` packages:

```
> sudo pip install fparser pyparsing
```

**Tip:** With `pip` it is possible to install packages either system-wide (which requires root privileges) as above, or for a single user only (in `~/.local`). While the latter is only useful for one particular user, it means that PSyclone can be installed using `pip` without needing root privileges. In order to install a package for a user, add the `--user` command line option to all `pip` commands. This flag requests that the packages be installed locally for the current user rather than requiring root access:

```
> pip install --user fparser pyparsing
```

You may remove the use of `sudo` and add the `--user` option to all `pip` commands described in this document.

Uninstalling is simply a matter of doing:

```
> sudo pip uninstall fparser pyparsing
```

PSyclone supports the ability to output a schedule dependency graph using the `graphviz` package. This is optional and the associated routine will silently return if the `graphviz` bindings are not installed. If you have the `graphviz` package installed (see especially section [Installing dependencies on Ubuntu](#) if you are on Ubuntu), you also need to install the python bindings to the `graphviz` package:

```
> sudo pip install graphviz
```

If you just want to use PSyclone then you've installed all you need and you are ready to go to the getting-going [Run](#) section.

## CONFIGURATION

PSyclone reads various run-time configuration options from the `psyclone.cfg` file. As described in [Configuration](#), the default `psyclone.cfg` configuration file is installed in `<python-base-prefix>/share/psyclone/` during the installation process. The original version of this file is in the `PSyclone/config` directory of the PSyclone distribution.

At execution-time, the user can specify a custom configuration file to be used. This can either be done with the `--config` command line option, or by specifying the (full path to the) configuration file to use via the `PSYCLONE_CONFIG` environment variable. If the specified configuration file is not found then PSyclone will fall back to searching in a list of default locations.

The ordering of these locations depends upon whether PSyclone is being run within a Python virtual environment (such as `venv`). If no virtual environment is detected then the locations searched, in order, are:

1. `${PWD}/.psyclone/`
2. `${HOME}/.local/share/psyclone/`
3. `<python-base-dir>/share/psyclone/`

where `<python-base-dir>` is the path stored in Python's `sys.prefix`.

If a virtual environment is detected then it is assumed that the `share` directory will be a part of that environment. In order to maintain isolation of distinct virtual environments this directory is then checked *before* the user's home directory, i.e. the list of locations searched is now:

1. `${PWD}/.psyclone/`
2. `<python-base-dir>/share/psyclone/`
3. `${HOME}/.local/share/psyclone/`

Note that for developers a slightly different configuration handling is implemented, see [Module: configuration](#) for details.

### 20.1 Options

The configuration file is read by the Python `ConfigParser` class (<https://docs.python.org/3/library/configparser.html>) and must be formatted accordingly. It currently consists of a `DEFAULT` section e.g.:

```
[DEFAULT]
API = dynamo0.3
DEFAULTSTUBAPI = dynamo0.3
DISTRIBUTED_MEMORY = true
REPRODUCIBLE_REDUCTIONS = false
REPROD_PAD_SIZE = 8
```

and an optional API specific section, for example for dynamo0.3 section:

```
[dynamo0.3]
access_mapping = gh_read:read, gh_write:write, gh_rw:readwrite,
                  gh_inc:inc, gh_sum:sum

COMPUTE_ANNEXED_DOFS = false
```

or for gocean1.0:

```
[gocean1.0]
access_mapping = go_read:read, go_write:write, go_readwrite:readwrite

iteration-spaces = offset_sw:ct:internal_we_halo:1:2:3:4
                  offset_sw:ct:internal_ns_halo:1:{stop}:1:{stop}+1
```

The meaning of the various entries is described in the following sub-sections.

Note that ConfigParser supports various forms of boolean entry including “true/false”, “yes/no” and “1/0”. See <https://docs.python.org/3/library/configparser.html#supported-datatypes> for more details.

### 20.1.1 DEFAULT Section

This section contains entries that are, in principle, applicable to all APIs supported by PSyclone.

Entry	Description
API	The API that PSyclone assumes an Algorithm/Kernl conforms to if no API is specified. Must be one of the APIs supported by PSyclone (dynamo0.1, dynamo0.3, gocean0.1, gocean1.0 and nemo). If there is no API specified and there is only one API-specific section in the config file loaded, this API will be used. This value can be overwritten by the command line option ‘-api’. If there is no API entry in the config file, and ‘-api’ is not specified on the command line, dynamo0.3 is used as default.
DEFAULTSTUBAPI	The API that the kernel-stub generator assumes by default. Must be one of the stub-APIs supported by PSyclone (dynamo0.3 only at this stage).
DISTRIBUTED_MEMORY	Whether or not to generate code for distributed-memory parallelism by default. Note that this is currently only supported for the dynamo0.3 API.
REPRODUCIBLE_REDUCTIONS	Whether or not to generate code for reproducible OpenMP reductions (see <i>Reductions</i> ) by default.
REPROD_PAD_SIZE	If generating code for reproducible OpenMP reductions, this setting controls the amount of padding used between elements of the array in which each thread accumulates its local reduction. (This prevents false sharing of cache lines by different threads.)

### 20.1.2 Common Sections

The following entries must be defined for each API in order for PSyclone to work as expected:



Entry	Description
access_mapping	This field defines the strings that are used by a particular API to indicate write, read, ... access. Its value is a comma separated list of access-string:access pairs, e.g.: gh_read:read, gh_write:write, gh_rw:readwrite, gh_inc:inc, gh_sum:sum At this stage these 5 types are defined for read, write, read+write, increment and summation access by PSyclone. Sum is a form of reduction. The gocean APIs do not support increment or sum, so they only define three mappings for read, write, and readwrite.

### 20.1.3 dynamo0.3 Section

This section contains configuration options that are only applicable when using the Dynamo 0.3 API.

Entry	Description
COMPUTE_ANNEXED_DOFS	Whether or not to perform redundant computation over annexed dofs in order to reduce the number of halo exchanges. See <a href="#">Dof iterators</a> in the Developers' guide.

### 20.1.4 gocean1.0 Section

This section contains configuration options that are only applicable when using the Gocean 1.0 API.

Entry	Description
iteration-spaces	This contains definitions of additional iteration spaces used by PSyclone. A detailed description can be found in the <a href="#">Configuration</a> section of the GOcean1.0 chapter.

### 20.1.5 NEMO Section

This section contains configuration options that are only applicable when using the NEMO API.

Entry	Description
mapping-TYPE	This declares a mapping for a certain loop level, specified as TYPE. Each value must have three key:value pairs. A value can be empty if it is not required or not known, but the key must still be specified. The required keys are: var: the variable name that indicates the loop level, start: the first loop iteration, and stop: the last loop iteration. Each loop detected by the NEMO API will be given one of the TYPE values specified in the configuration file. See the example below for more details.
index-order	Specifies the order in which loops are created when converting an implicit loop to an explicit loop. All values in this comma-separated list must have a corresponding mapping-TYPE value defined.

Below we show an example of the NEMO section of a PSyclone configuration file. Note how the values in `index-order` have corresponding mapping entries, e.g. `mapping-lon`, `mapping-lat` etc.:

```
mapping-lon = var: ji, start: 1, stop: jpi
mapping-lat = var: jj, start: 1, stop: jpj
mapping-levels = var: jk, start: 1, stop: jpk
mapping-tracers = var: jt, start: 1, stop:
mapping-unknown = var: , start: 1, stop:

index-order = lon, lat, levels, tracers
```

If a NEMO loop then uses `Do jj=...`, PSyclone will give this loop the type 'lat', because the loop uses the variable name specified in the configuration file for a loop of type 'lat'. The loop type can be accessed using `loop.loop_type`, i.e. in this example it will be `loop.loop_type == 'lat'`.

The entry `mapping-unknown` has an empty value for the key 'var'. This means that the type 'unknown' will be used for any loop that can not be mapped using any of the other variable names in the configuration file.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- [nem13] *NEMO Coding Conventions*. 2013. URL: [https://forge.ipsl.jussieu.fr/nemo/attachment/wiki/Literature/NEMO\\_coding.conv\\_v3.pdf](https://forge.ipsl.jussieu.fr/nemo/attachment/wiki/Literature/NEMO_coding.conv_v3.pdf).



## PYTHON MODULE INDEX

### p

- `psyclone.alg_gen`, [147](#)
- `psyclone.generator`, [125](#)
- `psyclone.line_length`, [148](#)
- `psyclone.parse.algorithm`, [126](#)
- `psyclone.psyGen`, [146](#)
- `psyclone.transformations`, [126](#)



## INDEX

### A

- ACCDDataTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 126
- ACCEnterDataTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 127
- ACCKernelsTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 128
- ACCLoopTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 128
- ACCParallelTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 130
- ACCRoutineTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 130
- Alg (class in *psyclone.alg\_gen*), 147
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans* method), 127
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans* method), 127
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans* method), 128
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans* method), 129
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans* method), 130
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans* method), 131
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoOp3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans* method), 132
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoOp3ColourTrans* method), 133
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoOp3KernelConstTrans* method), 133
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoOp3OMPLoopTrans* method), 134
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoOp3RedundantComputationTrans* method), 134
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans* method), 135
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans* method), 135
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans* method), 136
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans* method), 138
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans* method), 138
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans* method), 139
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans* method), 137
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans* method), 137
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans* method), 139
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans* method), 140
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans* method), 140
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans* method), 141
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans* method), 142
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans* method), 143
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelLoopTrans* method), 144
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ParallelLoopTrans* method), 145
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ParallelRegionTrans* method), 145
- apply () (*psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans* method), 146

### C

- Trans\_intergrid () (in module *psyclone.transformations*), 146

- ComputationTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 131

### D

- dynamoOp3 (*psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans* attribute), 128
- DynamoOp3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans (class in *psyclone.transformations*), 131

Dynamo0p3ColourTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 132

Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 133

Dynamo0p3OMPLoopTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 134

Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 134

DynamoExtractRegionTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 135

DynamoLoopFuseTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 135

DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 135

## E

ExtractRegionTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 136

## F

FortLineLength (class in psyclone.line\_length), 148

## G

gen (psyclone.alg\_gen.Alg attribute), 147

gen (psyclone.psyGen.PSy attribute), 147

generate() (in module psyclone.generator), 125

get\_trans\_name() (psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo method), 33

get\_trans\_num() (psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo method), 33

GOceanExtractRegionTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 138

GOceanLoopFuseTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 138

GOceanOMPLoopTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 138

GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 138

GOConstLoopBoundsTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 136

GOLoopSwapTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 137

## I

inline() (psyclone.psyGen.PSy method), 147

## K

KernelModuleInlineTrans (class in psy-clone.transformations), 139

KernelTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 139

## L

length (psyclone.line\_length.FortLineLength attribute), 148

list (psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo attribute), 33

long\_lines() (psyclone.line\_length.FortLineLength method), 148

LoopFuseTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 140

## M

MoveTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 140

## N

name (psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans attribute), 127

name (psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans attribute), 128

name (psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans attribute), 128

name (psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans attribute), 129

name (psyclone.transformations.ACCTrans attribute), 130

name (psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans attribute), 131

name (psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans attribute), 131

name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans attribute), 132

name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTrans attribute), 133

name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans attribute), 134

name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3OMPLoopTrans attribute), 134

name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans attribute), 135

name (psyclone.transformations.DynamoExtractRegionTrans attribute), 135

name (psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans attribute), 135

name (psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans attribute), 136

name (psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans attribute), 136

name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanExtractRegionTrans attribute), 138

name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans attribute), 138

name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans attribute), 138

name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans attribute), 139

name (psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans attribute), 137

name (psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans attribute), 137



[name \(psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans attribute\), 139](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans attribute\), 140](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans attribute\), 140](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans attribute\), 141](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans attribute\), 142](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans attribute\), 143](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelLoopTrans attribute\), 144](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans attribute\), 145](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.ParallelLoopTrans attribute\), 145](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.ParallelRegionTrans attribute\), 145](#)  
[name \(psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans attribute\), 146](#)  
[nemo \(psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans attribute\), 128](#)  
[NemoExplicitLoopTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 140](#)  
[num\\_trans \(psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo attribute\), 33](#)

## O

[OCLTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 142](#)  
[omp\\_schedule \(psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans attribute\), 143](#)  
[OMPLoopTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 142](#)  
[OMPParallelLoopTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 143](#)  
[OMPParallelTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 144](#)

## P

[ParallelLoopTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 145](#)  
[ParallelRegionTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 145](#)  
[parse\(\) \(in module psyclone.parse.algorithm\), 126](#)  
[process\(\) \(psyclone.line\\_length.FortLineLength method\), 148](#)  
[profiler \(psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans attribute\), 146](#)  
[ProfileRegionTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 145](#)  
[PSy \(class in psyclone.psyGen\), 146](#)  
[psyclone.alg\\_gen \(module\), 147](#)

[psyclone.generator \(module\), 125](#)  
[psyclone.line\\_length \(module\), 148](#)  
[psyclone.parse.algorithm \(module\), 126](#)  
[psyclone.psyGen \(module\), 146](#)  
[psyclone.transformations \(module\), 126](#)  
[psyGen \(psyclone.transformations.ACCTestDataTrans attribute\), 127](#)  
[psyGen \(psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans attribute\), 128](#)  
[psyGen \(psyclone.transformations.ACCTrans attribute\), 130](#)  
[psyGen \(psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans attribute\), 136](#)  
[psyGen \(psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans attribute\), 145](#)  
[psyGen \(psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans attribute\), 146](#)

## R

[RegionTrans \(class in psyclone.transformations\), 146](#)

## T

[TransformationError, 146](#)  
[TransInfo \(class in psyclone.psyGen\), 33](#)

## V

[validate\(\) \(psyclone.transformations.ACCTrans method\), 131](#)  
[validate\(\) \(psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans method\), 139](#)  
[validate\(\) \(psyclone.transformations.KernelTrans static method\), 139](#)  
[validate\(\) \(psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans method\), 141](#)  
[validate\(\) \(psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans method\), 142](#)